#### Contributors

Floyer, John, Sir, 1649-1734

#### **Publication/Creation**

London : Richard Wilkin, 1698.

#### **Persistent URL**

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/bkj4pj6g

#### License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



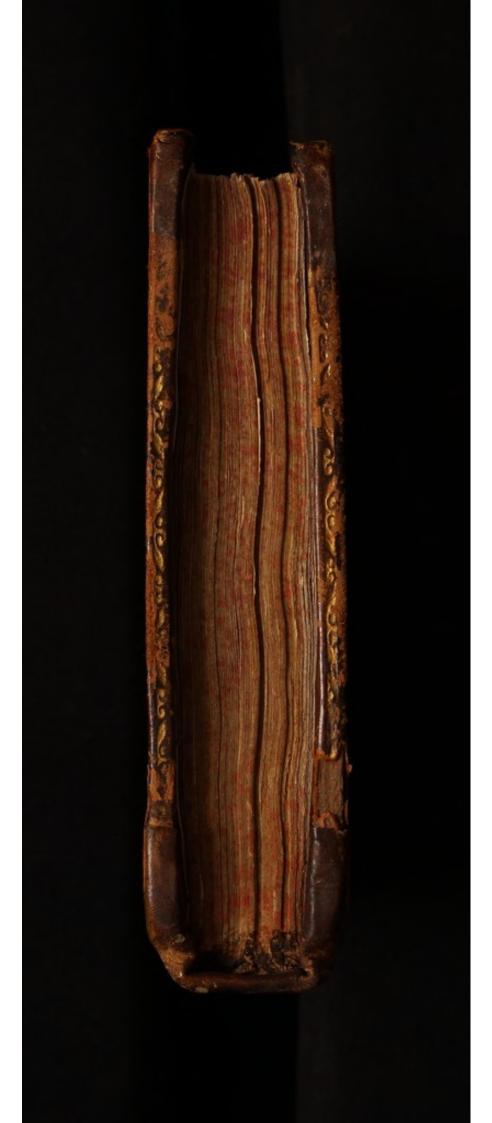
Wellcome Collection 183 Euston Road London NW1 2BE UK T +44 (0)20 7611 8722 E library@wellcomecollection.org https://wellcomecollection.org

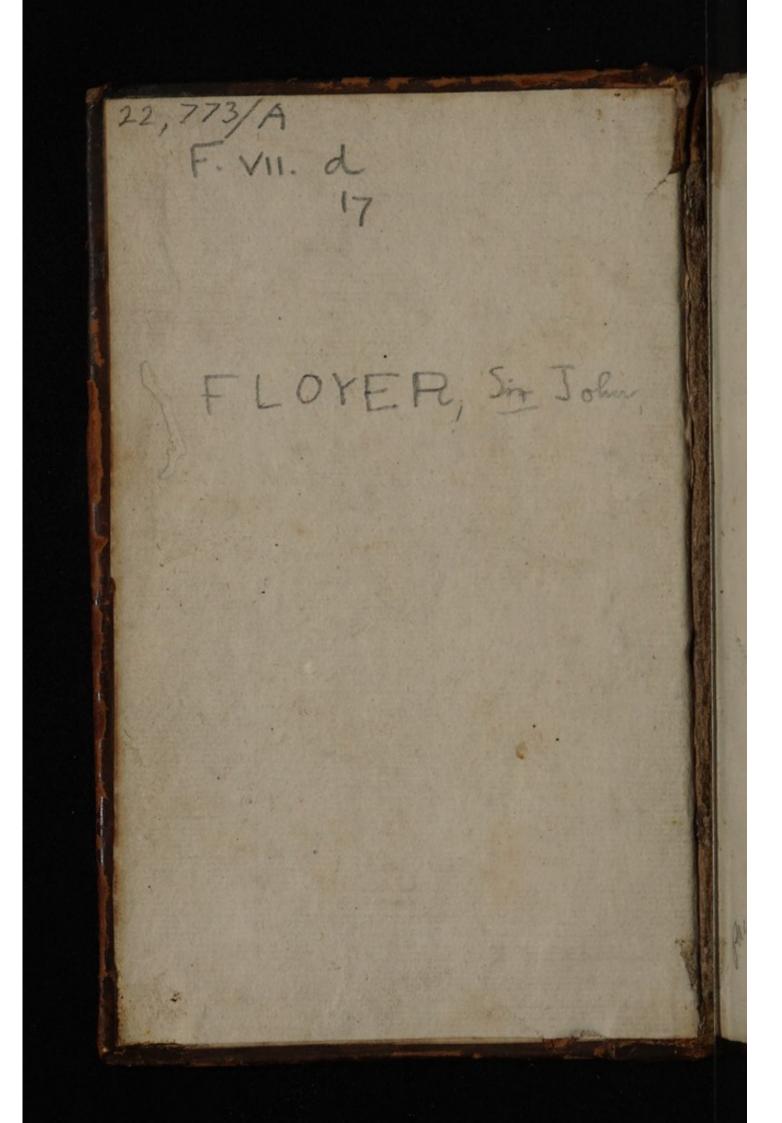


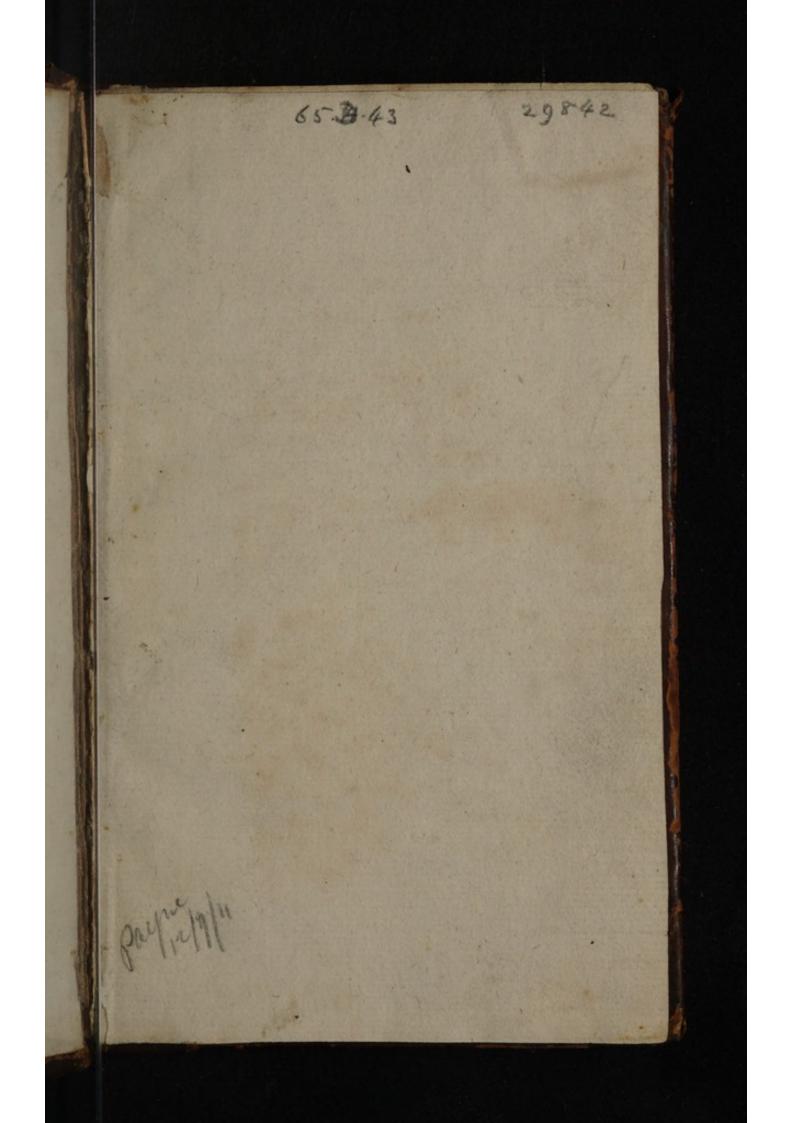


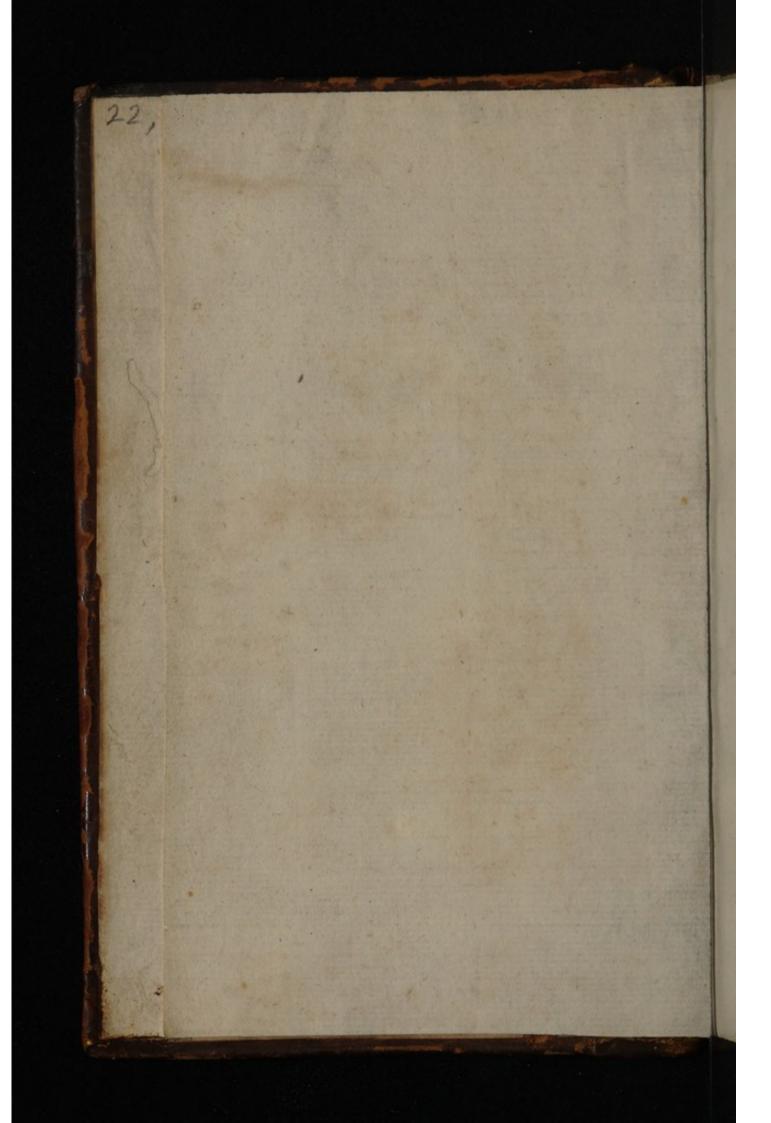


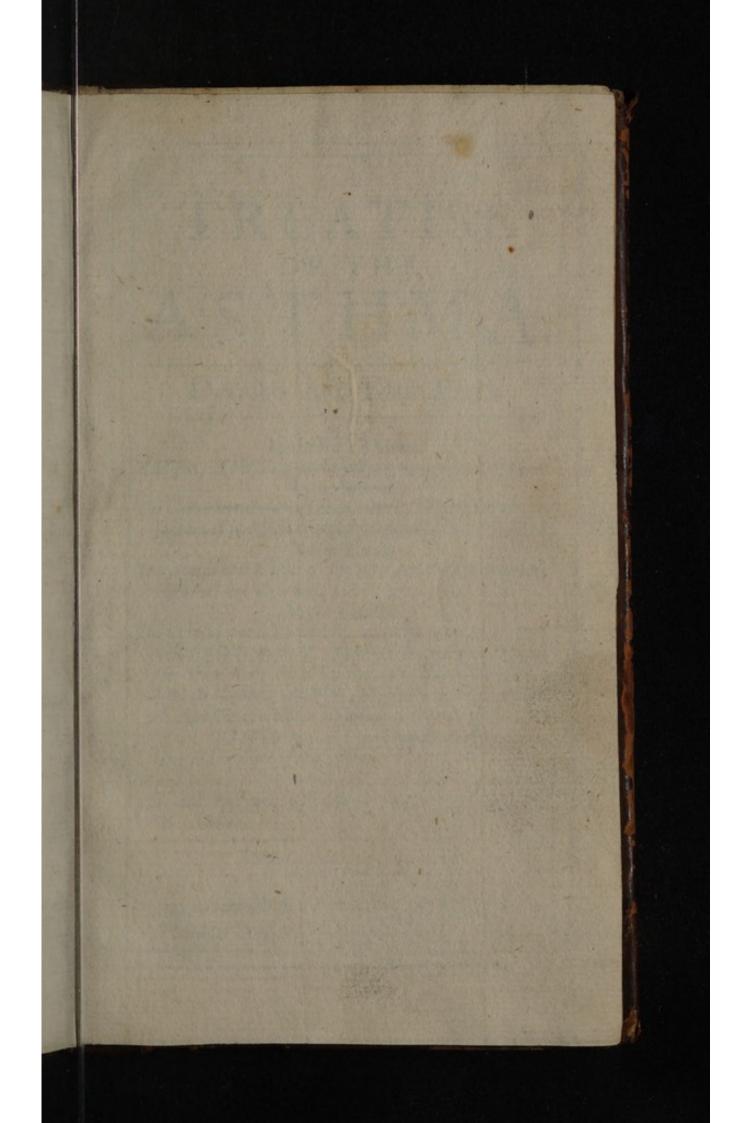


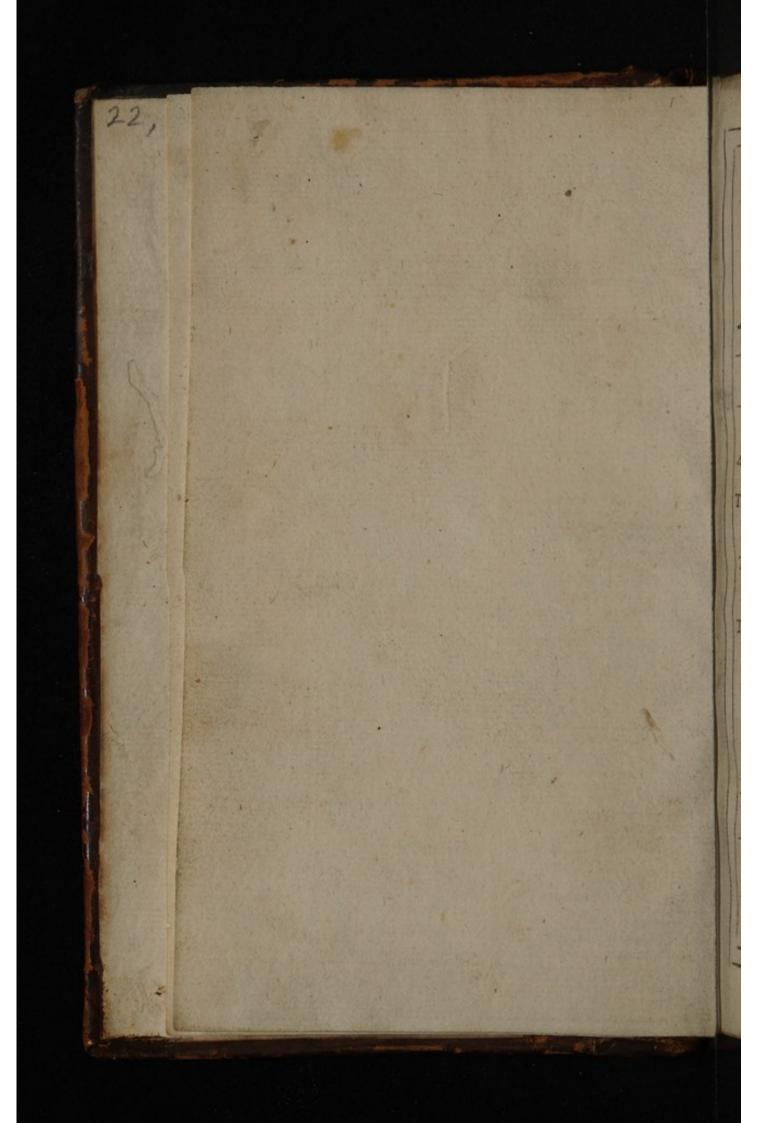












# TREATISE OF THE ASTHMA.

# Divided into Four Parts.

In the First is given A History of the Fits, and the Symptoms preceding them. In the Second,

The Cacochymia which disposes to the Fit, and the Rarefaction of the Spirits which produces it, are described. In the Third,

The Accidental Caufes of the Fit, and the Symptomatic Afthmas are observed.

In the Fourth,

The Cure of the Afthma Fit, and the Method of Preventing it is proposed. To which is annext a Digreffion about the several Species of Acids distinguish'd by their Tastes. And 'tis observed how far they were thought Convenient or Injurious in general Practice by the Old Writers, and most particularly in relation to the Cure of the Asthma.

Των μλο τεαχειών άρζεειών ή βαάδη σενοχωεία τίς ββ. Galen.

# LONDON,

Printed for Richard Wilkin, at the King's-Head in St. Paul's Church-Yard. 1698.

22 29842 11 Acres 11 11 c bejogeoge ha TASHAD A fer Gr tag [[aderrations]] who are well a Ancient and Modern Anchors, b 24 and their Old a votions, and Pt CO which I Thall here their utstukets to all the Micpr have Writche that Subject. de SIL

#### TO THE

Learned and Judicious Phyfician, Dr. PHINEAS FOWKE, A T

Wyrly in Staffordsbire.

SIR,

Have many Reafons for my Dedication of the following Treatife to your felf: The particular Favours you have fhewed me, have deferved a greater Acknowledgment, than this fmall Prefent I make you, as a Teftimony of my Gratitude; but in this Undertaking I fhall Appeal to you, who are well read both in the Ancient and Modern Authors, as the most Candid and Learned Judge, concerning their Old Notions, and Practice in the Afthma, which I shall here prefer, for their usefulness to all the Moderns that have Writ on that Subject.

Sir, I think my felf fo much obliged to those Learned old Authors you lent A 2 me,

me, from that Large and Curious Colleation in your own Study, that I cannot but here own the Benefit I received by Reading of them, and following their Method of Practice on my felf and others; I hope this will be a fufficient Excufe for my endeavouring to justify their Notions, and Explaining of them, and for the Recommendation I fhall give of their Medicines.

Sir, I here prefent you with your own old Authors, drefs'd up in the prefent new Philofophy, for that changes its Fafhion in every Age; for it would not now appear Modifh to express themfelves in the Aristotelian way, but as to their fensible Observations, and useful Methods of Practice, they will last for ever, as being true Descriptions of Natural Things, and confirmed by frequent Observation and Experiments.

My Defign is not in this Dedication to Compliment your Philosophic way of Living, your Universal Learning, nor Greatness of Mind in retiring from all the Pleasures, and Impertinent Business of Life, that you might more freely converse with your Learned Authors; Tho' these are sufficient Subjects for a large Enco-

Encomium, I must confess my felf unfit for well performing of it; neither would your great Humility admit of a just Praife of your Virtues.

Dt

V

Г

s;

)[

is,

e...

2.

n

W

Dn

0-

10

le

a-

15 Id

nd

to

of

101

the

of

on-

'ho'

rge

00-

I know your Curious Genius requires fome Variety of Thoughts to divert it, or fome Philofophic Enquiry to entertain it, for which end I will here propofe my following Obfervations, by which you will difcern the defign of this Treatife, and the good Performance of the Old, and the Faults of the New Writers, in treating of the Afthma.

First, I shall observe that that is the most useful Notion of the Asthma, from whence we can take our Indications for Practice, and which is deduced from an exact and full sensible History of the Difease, its Subject, Causes, and Symptoms.

I have affigned the immediate Caufe of the Afthma, to the Sraitnels, Compreffion, or Constriction of the Bronchia; and in the continued Afthma, the Caufes must be constant, as Dropsy, Tubercuhum, &c. but in the Periodic Afthma, the Returns must depend on the Defluxion of Humours on the Prima via, where the Inflations begin, or on the Lungs and Nerves, if either were formerly weakned

A 3

by

by other Difeafes; these Hypochondriac, or Pneumonic, or Nervous Inflations, depend all on the same Defluxion of Serum; and they all frequently happen in old Afthmatics at the same time.

This Defluxion of Serum evidently appears in loole Stools, fluxes of Urine, great Spitting, and the Drowliness of the Head in the beginning of the Afthma Fit: This Defluxion depends on the Effervefcence of Humours, because there is a feverish Heat at that time, which rarefies the Serum, and drives it through the Glands. I think it not probable that the Nerves could contain fo much Serum, but rather that the flimy and flatulent Cacochymia irritates the Heart to stronger Pulsation, and Excretion of those Humours, as the bilious Contents do irritate the Guts. For when we find Excrementitious Humors evacuated, we may rationally suppose that their Vellication produced their Excretion, rather than any preternatural Faults of Spirits.

The Cacochymia which irritates, we observe by the Windiness and Sliminess of Humours evacuated.

This Inflation in the Stomach, the Effervescence in the Blood, and Inflation in the

the Pneumonic Membranes, comprehend the large Nature of this Difease; and contrary to these our Practical Notions must aim, by fuppreffing the Effervescence, which Cures the Defluxion at the fame time; and then the flatulent and flimy Cacochymia must be Evacuated and Corrected.

If the Afthma be but partially defcribed, and a false Hypothesis built on that Defcription, the Practice answering that is very Impertinent, or injurious.

Tho' the old Notion of the Afthma's being a Defluxion of ferous Humours, was certainly true, because evident to our Senfes, by the Evacuation of Serofities; yet the Explication of that Defluxion, by comparing the Head to a Cupping-Glafs, which draws up Humidities by its Heat, and causes them after to descend on the Lungs, was notorioufly false, and contrary to the Structure of the folid Parts, and the Circulation of the Fluids.

This fanciful Notion occasioned much impertinent Practice, by Fumes, Errhines, Apophlegmatisms, Plaisters to the Head, and Iffues, which have all fallen with the Hypothesis they rose from. These Old Writers neglected the Effervescence, and the

11

. A 4

11

the Nervous Inflations I have mentioned. The Age fucceeding obferv'd a great Vifcidity in the Humours of the Lungs, and to that alone, they impute this Stertorous Wheefing; these endeavoured to Cure this Vifcidity and the Tubercula, by prodigious pectoral Antidotes, made for the Althma, but still they neglected the Effervescence, and nervous Inflations, and therefore had no fucces.

The Later Writers, as Van Helmont, and Dr. Willis, have most particularly described the nervous Symptoms of the Asthma, and built their Hypothesis on the supposition, that 'tis a Convulsion; and that what Cures that will relieve the Asthma: This false Hypothesis led them into an injurious Practice, by giving hot Tinctures, acrid Gums, and volatil Salts, and fulphur Medicines.

Some Writers, as Sylvius, and Etmuller, have obferved the Hypochondriac Symptoms in the Stomach, and conclude the Afthma is a Hypochondriacal Flatus, and wants Digeftives.

By these Observations I design to prove, that all our Practical Notions and Indications ought to be taken from all the senfible Observations in a Disease, and then

we

we fhall avoid the feveral Errors into which many Learned Hypothefes lead us and then our Practice will alway be the fame, though the general Philofophy, by which we explain our Notions, alters with the Age.

The old fenfible Cacochymias must still be allowed, and the Method of Curing them by contrary Taftes, becaufe very \* rational; therefore though the Circulation of the Blood be lately difcover'd, and the Circulation of the Serum through the Lymphatic Veffels, yet these Discoveries have made but little Alterations in the Practice of Phyfic, but by that we can bette: explain the Motion of Humours, and the Translation of Difeases from one Part to another; therefore this Difcovery har only helped us to folve fome Difficultie. we knew not before, and to give Reafon. for them: Yet still this is the chief Scope of our Practice, to Evacuate the Quantity, and Correct the ill Quality of the Cacochymia's anciently defcribed; and we must use the fame Medicines as the old Writers advife.

The Nervous Juice is ftill as much unknown as formerly, and therefore its Affections are inexplicable; and though it ftill

1e

1

e,

1.

1-

en

10

ftill be a Difpute whether the Motion of the Heart in a Fever be by an Irritation of the fermenting Blood, or the difordered Spirits, yet it will be the fame thing as to Practice; for by which foever of them the Rarefaction happens in the Afthma, I muft level my Method against the Effervescence, if I will cure the Fit or prevent it.

If I compare our Bodies to a Watch, and the Spirits to the Spring of it, becaufe on that all its Motions depend, as also on the Spirits in an Animal Body, as in the Watch: The reason of its going false, may be the fault of the Wheels, or many other Contrivances; and as it would be abfurd, when the Watch is out of Order, to lay all the faults on the Spring, because on that depends all its false as well as regular Motion; fo it is in our Bodies, tho' the Spirits produce all the regular and irregular Motions, yet, as in the Watch, the irregularity must depend on other Organs ill conffituted, fo in the Body the Lungs being opprefied, the regular Refpiration becomes a Dyspnaa; if the Bronchia be constringed, an Asthma; if any extraordinary thing or Fume affect the Skin of the Eyes, Tears immediately flow,

and the Saliva runs upon any Acrimony which irritates the Palate. The fame Motions which are expected in the Nerves by external Objects, are produced by fharp Acrimony in the Humours, which, if bilious in the Stomach, excite Vomiting and Purging in the Cholera. If the Humours ferment in the Veins, they irritate the Heart to a violent Circulation, which raises the Fever, which lasts only till the Fermentation ceases; but in those Fevers which depend on the difordered Spirits, they are but of small continuance. And we must observe that the Animal Spirits rife from the Blood, and have both their Origine, and good or ill Temper thence : and tho' they move the Fluids, yet that external Motion only helps and promotes the intestine Motion of the Humours (as Beer and Wines are promoted in their depuration, by being carried on Shipboard.) If the Spirits should circulate Water through the Veins (and the Hydropical Serum is not much different) neither Blood nor a true natural Heat would arife in the Water by Ten thousand Circulations; by which we find we must look back to the old Cacochymias, to explain the Nature of Humours, and the Difeases,

an

t

0

m

and in the Afthma we must retain the Flatulencies anciently observed; and the Defluxion of Serum both on the Guts, the Lungs and Brains.

The Dulnefs and Drowfinefs of the Head, is a fign of a Defluxion through the Nerves in Hyfteric Cafes, as well as the Flux of Urine in them ; but for fatisfying the *Helmontians*, I will confefs the Hyfteric Afthma has no Defluxion through the Glands of the Lungs, till it is an old Difeafe; but the Serum in this only makes its Defluxion through the Glands in the Stomach, and Guts, and Brain; there is the fameEffervefcencies, the fame Flatulencies, and confequently the fame Cacochymias in thefe, as in the Spitting Afthma.

If I fhould defcribe only the Nature of Spirits in Wine, all Perfons would believe I talked like a Philofopher, but not much to Edify any one, who only from the Tafte of the Wine can belt defcribe its Nature, whether fweet, rough, or fharp, or bitterifh; and when it is vitiated, 'tis flat, or waterifh, four, roapy, windy, bitter, fetid, full of Lees, and Ferments; thefe are all fenfible Vices in Wines, and the fame in Animal Humours we call our Cacochymias. And as the Vintners can Cure all their

their Wines by particular Taftes, without being vers'd in the Mechanic, Chymical, or Microfcopical Obfervations about Wines; fo may Phificians both understand, and cure Diseafes by a rational Use of sensible Observations, and the old *Galenical* Practices built on them, may yet stand unmoved.

It is a very fhort way of Explaining Difeafes, to tell us, that the Spirits, or Archeus, are either weak, or ftrong; in a fury, or ftupid : This Philofophy is much admired, tho' not underftood either by Plebeians, or Philofophers, who ought to admit nothing either in Difeafes or Medicines, but fenfible Obfervations, and those Notions which are immediately deduced from them. These we can be certain of, and on these the Galenists built their Practice, and these two fensible Obfervations will always ftand good ;

1. That the Afthma is a Defluxion.

2. That all Medicines in the Afthma ought to be inciding without Heat.

The Invention of the Microfcope has much difcovered the fenfible Mechanism of the folid Parts; but what Indication can I take from the Globuli of the Fluid? Tho' they may help me better to Explain, vet

yet I fear I shall not be inabled by their Difcovery eafily to cure any Difease.

TY

fto

Sta

len

25

cip Mi

an

IN

tio

ga

fto

Anthe

the

An

m

an

Di

d

m

V

ry.

All the old Notions of the Afthma grounded on fenfible Observations, on which a fuccefsful Practice depends, ought still to be retained, and if it be necessary they may be better explained. So in the Afthma, we observe there is a Defluxion of Serofities, and for this Vomits and Purgers were fuccessfully used by the Ancients; therefore the new Writers unjuftly explode that fenfible Notion, becaufe ill explained. In this cafe we muft mend the Explication of a Defluxion, and not fearch for the Fountain of Rheum in the Head, but in the Blood, and allow the Nerves to be the Instruments of the Defluxion.

If it were poffible for us to difcern all the Mechanical Structures of the folid Parts, and all the Motions and Figures of the Fluid, we might then that way explain all our Difeates; but fince that will alway be impoffible to our dull Senfes, 'tis not fair to trouble the Learned with fancied Figures and Motions, becaufe poffible : But by obferving the fenfible effects of Mechanic Motions, the Cacochymias, we do as much as is neceffa-

ry. For from thence we take our Indications of those Remedies which will reftore vitiated Humours to their natural State.

The Chymifts unjuftly reject the Galenic Cacochymias, and explain as well as cure all Difeafes by their Mineral Principles, which feems very abfurd, fince Minerals are of a very different Nature, and they are produced by different Digeftions and Preparations. Animal Humours are made by particular Fermentations, Circulations, Secretions, in our Organiz'd Bodies, from a pure Milk, but Minerals arife from fulphur Fumes, and stony Particles coagulated in the Earth. And all Chymical Product from them are the Effects of a violent Fire; fo that by the mixtures of Chymical Medicines, we can guess but little at the diseased State of Animal Humours.

I generally observe, that all pure Chymical Authors know little of Anatomy, and the Nature of Animal Humours; for Diftillation alters the natural or difeased Conftitutions, and therefore we cannot discover either by the Fire: The Chymists wholly depend on the extolled Virtue of their Medicine; if prepared from

from Antimony, or Quickfilver, it is a certain Panacea, given in all Difeafes, without any Method; and the Chymifts impute great Knowledge to their Medicine, in finding out the Difeafe, and making various Operations, or corroborating Nature, as Nature requires, all which are more abfurd than any thing in the Galenic Hypothefis, and shew the Ignorance of the Chymift in the nature of Medicines, and method of Practice.

The Empyrical Doctors reject all our Cacochymias; they want general Philofophy, Anatomy, and Chymistry, and fo cannot make any rational Notion of the Difease, from the Consideration of all its Symptoms; they know therefore nothing of any rational Method of Practice, but go on in the dull Road of Vomiting, Purging, the Cortex, Steel, Salivating, Medicinal Waters; whereas the true Rational Galenist, confiders that Notion of the Difeafe which agrees with all the Symptoms, and prefcribes fuch Taftes as will cure each Cacochymia ; he confiders . the Constitution of the Patient, the Complication of Difeases, and can give a good Reafon for altering the common Method, when neceffary. He with his Vegetables

2

h-

11-

le,

ng

a.

re

226 of

es,

Ur

0-

Id

10

Its

ng

g,

g,

2-

of

he

125

TS

n-od

od,

ta-

es

bles more cures fafely, than with Minerals: he makes no Preparations, but what Nature has prepared he gives, in Powder or Decoction, &c. He is Nature's Servant, and alters his Methods to ferve her, and uses the only means we have to observe her, our Senfes and Experience.

I shall make this my last Observation, that the old Writers found out the most ufeful Medicines in the Afthma.

There is a natural Inftinct, by which all Animals find out their proper Food, and by the fame Method they observe what Medicines are most fuitable to their Difeafes.

The Stomach prepares all the Humours for the Veins, and in chuing of the Food, it naturally defires that which is like to our Humours, to nourifi them; the Tongue is well pleafed with those Tastes which agree with the Stomach, becaufe of the common Membrane which covers both.

In a healthful State, the Tongue and Stomach delight in sweet Tastes, because the Blood and Saliva have that; but in a difeased State of Humours, those Tattes are most pleafant, which alter it; as when we are too hot, cool Taftes ; when dry, the

the Humid; and e contra, Nature teaches us to Cure our felves by contrary Taftes. And Reafon and Experience tell us, that thin Humours require incraffing vifcid Taftes; and the glutinous Humours, inciding Acrids; and the roughness of the folid Parts, Oily Lenients; and the flux of all Humours, Styptics. In Fevers we naturally defire Acids; and in ill Digeftions, Bitters are grateful.

'Tis of no fmall moment in curing Difeafes, that our Taftes can inform us what Medicines are agreeable to the Stomach and Humours; and our Smells inform us what Medicines are fuitable to our Animal Spirits. And fince the Objects of these two Senfes differ only in the Tenuity of their Subftances; for Bitters, Acerbs, Acrids, affect our Taftes in the form of a Liquor; but a *Halitus* from the fame Medicines, affects our Smells; and becaufe of this fmall difference, from the Virtues of the Taftes mentioned, we may eafily guefs at the Efficacy of those particular Smells.

The old Writers observed, that the Cacochymia in the Afthma required Digestives, because of the Wind and Slime in the Stomach, and for this they used all the

the Wormwood Bitters, as Polium, Southernwood, Mugwort, and Wormwood it felf; and all the bitter Gums, as Ammoniacum, Galbanum, &c. and Gentian, Aristolochia, Briony.

The fame Authors obferved, that the Medicines in the Afthma muft cool, as well as incide, they therefore ufed Vinegar, and mixed divers Bitters and Acrids with it, to make it more inciding, as Squills, Orris, Nettles; and they obferved by their Taftes, that the Salfo-acids, fuch as Niter, and Sal Armoniac, had both an inciding and cooling Quality. They obferved the Flatulencies in the Afthma, and for that ufed the Carminatives fteeped in Vinegar, and boiled many Aromatics, as Thyme, Hyffop, Calamint in Oxymels.

They used Anticonvulsives, as Castor with Oxymels, and Rue mixed with Niter, in Diaspoliticum, and Briony 3s. in a Cyathus of Vinegar. Neither did they omit the use of Opiates, but gave a Caution about them.

Sir, I must have begged your Pardon for this long Letter, if I had not now prefented my felf as a Patient, who have the Privilege of telling the Injury received by

the

2 2

enced

the Modern Practifers, and of commending the beft Doctors for the Afthma, *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, becaufe I have received moft Benefit by their Medicines ; and I believe none is more able to defend thofe Fathers of our Faculty, and their rational Method of Practice, againft Chymifts, the Empirical, and the Mechanical Doctors, than your felf. I defire therefore, under your Patronage, to defend the old Truths and Fundamentals of our Faculty, A rational Practice, directed by fenfible Notions, and confirmed by the Experience of former Ages.

I am of Opinion, that most of the Difeafes incurable by the Modern Practice, as the Gout, Dropfy, Epilepfy, Leprofy, were oftner cured by the old Methods, which have been difused, and neglected upon the account of pure Chymical Medicines, and new Hypotheses, recommended by great Authors; these ought to be confidered, and revised by others, as I have done the Afthma.

I know your great Candor will commend an Ingenious probable Hypothefis, but that your Zeal for the good of Mankind, cannot but regret the rejecting old approved and ufeful Notions, and experienced

enced Medicines, becaufe they will not agree with a new Doctrin. I hope you will pardon my Faults, and accept this Performance with your ufual Candor, and believe me, that I prefent it to you, as a demonstration of my being a fincere Admirer of your Judgment and Learning, and as an acknowledgment of your kind Refpect to,

ancellantly inject Plenty of Blood through the

Arrentes of the Lungs, and that foon fills the Elood Veffels, and oppreffes the Langs, which

prefare being felt by the Nervau's Parts, and

chas Senfe communicated to the Muscles fer-

ving Inspiration, they, by their Contraction,

Ornt deately enlarge Bhe Cavity of the Break, and then the Air by its Etafficity prefies through the Trachen, and expands the

presses invougness Isungs. This Espansion of the

Litchfield, May 25. 1698

1. 1915 20 05 2 33

Honoured Sir, Your most Obliged Humble Servant, John Floyer.

ction and Expiration: for the Pulle

HE design of the following Treatife will be better understood, by giving a general Scheme of the several Causes and Species of the Afthma; but since that is a Depravation of Respiration, Ithink it neces-Sary to treat first of Respiration, its natural Causes and Use, and the simple Species of it, when depraved. I shall first observe that Re-Spiration depends on the Pulse of the Right Ventricle of the Heart, which naturally stimulates an Animal to the Reciprocal Motions of Inspiration and Expiration; for the Pulse incessantly injects Plenty of Blood through the Arteries of the Lungs, and that soon fills the Blood Vessels, and oppresses the Lungs, which pressure being felt by the Nervous Parts, and that Sense communicated to the Muscles serving Inspiration, they, by their Contraction, immediately enlarge the Cavity of the Breast, and then the Air by its Elasticity presses through the Trachea, and expands the Bladders of the Lungs. This Expansion of the.

The Differing

TOTHE

my Fanles and accept

### To the Reader.

the Bladder does necessarily extend and stretch the Blood Vessels, which are spread upon the Convex Superficies of the Bladders, and that stretching confequently less their Cavities, which is also compressed by the intruding weight of the Air; therefore both by the Expansion of the Lungs, and the Compression of the Air, the Blood is drove out of the Pneumonic Veffels, and the free admittance of more Blood is hindred, during a continuance of a full In-Spiration. This obliges the Animal after some Interval, by a feeling of a new Oppresfion from the Blood, and injected by the Pulse, and stopt in its Circulation during Inspiration, to use the Muscles designed for Expiration, which by their contraction pull down the Ribs and Sternum, and by forcing in the Belly, force the Diaphragme to go upwards into the Breast; and the Air which came into the Lungs in a state of Compression, is blown out intermist with watery Vapours, and being much rarefied by the heat of the Blood there, it is not unlike the Artificial Wind produced in an Æolopile half filled with Water, and heated by the Fire. This Rarefaction of the Air, makes its Efflation more easy, in Coughing, Sneezing, Speaking. If either Inspiration or Expiration be hindred, a Suffocation succeeds, which is a full

a 4

6742265

stop

# To the Reader.

br

胡

14

th

ftop in the Circulation of the Blood. After Expiration the Veffels are forunk as the Bladders be, and the Reticular Fibers of the Bladders, by closing them, express the Blood out of the Veffels; so that both a full Inspiration, and Expiration, force the Blood out of the Lungs, and during the Interval betwisst them, there is no Circulation thro? the Lungs, but a stop is for that short time given: And if we inject any Liquor thro? the Lungs of a dead Animal, it passes with difficulty; therefore the Circulation thro? the Lungs is more easily performed, whilst the Lungs are in continual motion of Expansion, and closing.

I shall next observe, That neither Inspiration nor Expiration, are simply necessary of themselves, but the reciprocal Motion only, whereby the Bladders of the Lungs are distended, and asterwards contracted, is absolutely necessary for the prolongation of an Animal Life.

If the Air were mixed with the Blood in Inspiration, that would easily appear by the Airs blowing up the Blood Vessels, as well as the Bladders, when we blow up the Lungs by a pair of Bellows, but we find no Air to pass into the Blood Vessels; the Air therefore can only cool the Blood by its contact thro' the Membranes,

#### To the Reader.

branes, as we feel it cools thro' the Skin; and for that end, when we are very hot, we defire to infpire cool Air; and it appears that Infpiration does not impress any new Matter on the Blood, because the Blood is drove out of the Lungs by Inspiration.

Neither is Expiration absolutely necessary, because many Fumes expire with the Air; for those Vapors may be collected in Bartolet's Pneumatolabium; and though the quantity be considerable, yet if all that is expired in a quarter of an Hour, were retained in the Blood Vessels, the Animal could not thereby be killed, so soon as we see it dies, if the Windpipe be but accidentally stopt. Morever the Animal dies in Mr. Boyle's Vacuum, where there is room enough for the Expiration of Fumes.

The third Observation I shall give, is, That the true Use of Respiration is for the preparing the Blood, and fresh Chyle injected into the Lungs, by the Heart, for a larger Circulation, by dividing it into smaller Parts, and Globuli, and by procuring them a more perfect mixture.

The Circulation of Blood thro' the Lungs began after the Birth of the Foetus, when the Respiration also began, and the first was the occasion of the other. The joint Original

of these Motions shew, they were designed for the same end.

If we confider the Blood that is injected from the Right Ventricle of the Heart, we may observe that it has a mixture of Chyle and Lymphawith it; and that this reciprocal Motion of Respiration may help the mixture of these; appears, because the shaking of the Lungs, as well as the compression of the Pulse divides the Globuli of the Blood, which appears always black, before it has passed the Lungs; but it acquires a floridity afterwards, as Blood long stirred by a Stick does, by the separation of the Globuli.

This change of its black colour into a florid, is all the fensible Alteration the Blood acquires by passing thro' the Lungs, which is best accounted for by the separation of the Globuli : For in the Feverish, the Hysterical and Maniac, the Blood is made, because of its violent Motion, very florid ; but in the Melancholic, where the Globuli are coagulated together, and where the Motion is languid, the Blood appears black, as in the Veins, where the motion is slow, but 'tis florid in the Arteries.

This mixture of Chyle and Blood in the Heart being imperfect, it would not be fit to be injected into the more folid Parts, and the

the Viscera, and to pass the Muscular Fi-bers, lest it should stick there. Therefore it was necessary, that this new Mass of Humours (bould have its first preparatory Circulation through a Part composed of Bladders and Air Vessels, which would eafily yeild to its Circulation. The Chylous Water being ill mixed, often sticks in the Lungs, and produces its Tubercula, and confequently Confumptions, by evacuating too much Chylous Matter. By the Blood's Sudden Return to the Heart, 'tis evident, this short Circulation was only a Preparative for a larger, viz. by well mixing the new Chyle with the Blood, and by dividing both into Globuli more small, and fit for Circulation, by the compression of the Pulse, and the smallness of the Vessels it passes, and most particularly by the Compression of the Air, which forces the Blood forward in Inspiration, and the Reticular Muscles in Expiration; so that the most probable use of Respiration is, the preparing the new Blood and Chyle by a minute division, for the next Circulation through the Arteries.

I will next confider the several Species of the depravations of our Respiration, and those Causes which they usually depend on.

. I. They

- I. They depend on the preternatural State of the Blood, and immediately on the preternatural Pulfation of the Right Ventricle of the Heart.
- II. On the Obstruction of the Blood Vessels or Air Vessels; or else their Compression, or Construction.
- III. On the Muscles designed in Respiration, to open and close the Breast; or else on the preternatural State of the Spirits, moving those Muscles.

I. If the Blood be copious, fermenting, or much rarefied, the Pulfe beats high, and full, and then the Lungs being much oppreffed by Blood, that stimulates the Muscles by confent, to distend the Breast fully for a large Inspiration of Air to fill the Lungs, and compress the Blood Veffels, and promote the Circulation through them; and this is to be called a full, great, or long Respiration, and is a sign of hot Blood.

When the quantity of Blood is small, or when its heat is moderate, the Pulse strikes low, the Lungs are not so much stimulated to a large Expansion, and therefore this Respiration is small; and as the Pulsation of the Heart declines in Vigor, so does the Respiration decrease in greatness.

. I. They

If

If the Pulfe beat quick, by the stimulation of hot fermenting Blood, then the Lungs are soon filled with Blood, and a dense or thick breathing is occasioned thereby, in which the Interval is short, and the Inspiration and Expiration follow one another guick.

On the contrary, if the Pulle be flow, and the Blood be crude, the Lungs are not filled therewith of a long time, and then the Respiration is rare, and the Interval betwixt Inspiration and Expiration is long.

If the Lungs be much oppreffed, and stimulated by the Blood, the Respiration is performed in a short time, and that we call a quick Breath; but if the Lungs be not much oppressed, the Respiration is slow, that is, a long time in doing.

Short breathing in English is used for divers of these Species, for a small Respiration, for the dense, for the quick; for all who have these may be called Beaxinvoor.

Since the feveral Species of fimple Refpirations mentioned do depend on the Pulfe, I may infer, that Refpiration in its natural Conftitution does so too; and as there is a great Analogy betwixt the Pulfe and Refpiration in their motion of Systole and Diastole, and the Intervals betwixt them, so they both agree in their use; for as the Pulfe, so does the

the Respiration help the Circulation through the Lungs, and the Separation of the Globuli, and the moulding of them to fit them for a large Circulation through the whole Habit of the Body.

The Diseases of the Blood alter Respiration, by altering the Pulse, as Fevers, Inflammations, which make Respiration dense or great, because the Pulse beats high and quick, and soon fills the Lungs.

II. Respiration is altered by Obstructions of the Blood Vessels in the Lungs, or else by those of the Air Vessels.

An Inflammation, Tumor, Abscess, and all constant Obstructions of the Blood Vessels, give a stop to the motion of Blood through the Lungs, and make the Respiration dense and guick; the same is the Respiration in the Dyspnea from Tumors of the Belly, and in the Gibbous.

When the Muscles labour much for Inspiration and Expiration; through some Obstrution, or Compression of the Bronchia, &c. we properly call this a Difficulty of Breath: But if this difficulty be by the Constriction of the Bronchia, 'tis properly the periodic Asthma: And if the Constriction be great, it is with Wheesing; but if less, the Wheesing is not so evident; the Pulse being stopt in the Asthma Fit, the Respiration is rare. The

The Vesicula being straitned, or pursed up, the Inspiration is small; the labouring and straining of the Inspiratory Muscles, makes the Respiration high.

The stop, or constriction, or compression, makes the Respiration slow.

The Muscles of the Breast seem to feel the weight of the Atmosphere, and labour under its pressure, because the Air cannot be received into the Lungs, to help the inlarging of the Breast.

This high and flow Respiration differs from the Delirous, because in the Asthma it is with labour and wheesing, tho' these Diseases agree in the low Fever, and coldness of the Extremity.

III. These alterations of Respiration depend on the Muscles and Spirits.

Every Organ, when diseased, hinders the Action in that way or manner it helped it when well; and therefore if the Muscles produced the Asthma, they must be Convulsively affected, and then we should observe them to move with twitching, as in Hysteric Fits, and such stops in Breathing, are always a sign of Convulsions.

If the Breathing be with trembling, 'tis a sign of Weakness, as in the Palsy.

If the Breath be suddenly stopt, it is by the Convulsion of the Pneumonic Muscles, as in an Hysteric Apnea, when either the Muscles of the Belly pull down the Sternum, or else the Diaphragme convulsed; keeps the Breast dilated for some time.

The old Writers thought the Animal Spirits diverted by odd Phancies in the Delirium, and that that hindred the Action of the Pneumonic Muscles; and therefore a great, and large, and rare Respiration happens, which was judged by them peculiar to the Delirious; and so in reality it is: For the greatness and freeness of the Inspiration distinguishes it from the Asthma; but the reason of the rareness is a stop on the Palsation of the Heart, by the contraction on it in Deliriums; but if a high Fever be complicated with Deliriums, the Pulse and Respiration must be quick, small, and dense, as Galen has well observed in Deliriums:

An Intermitting Pulse depends on the stop of the Circulation through the Lungs, because the Left Ventricle of the Heart, by that stop, wants sufficient Blood, to continue its constant Pulsation, (like a Mill which stands still for want of Water,) and this is plain in the Asthma, where the Pulse intermits, because of the Constriction, which stops the Circulation through the Lungs. "Tis

'Tis observed that the Asthmatic cannot Cough, Sneeze, nor Speak easily, because a sufficient quantity of Air cannot be drawn into the Lungs to produce those Actions, and the Expiration is difficult in them, as well as Inspiration.

The Asthmatic cannot move strongly, because 'tis necessary to hold the Breath in all strong Motions.

Iwas furprized to observe our Great Galen's Mistake, about the dense Respiration in the Asthma, but I perceive he describes only the continued Asthma; and his Mistake was also occasioned by the Observations he made upon Hippocrates's Cases of Asthmas complicated with Fevers; for in both the continued, and Asthma joyned with Fevers, he observed mundu musica, so Hippocrates describes the Daughter of Agiss, munumudual, whils her Tuberculum ripened, but after it broke she was Asthmatic.

Hippocrates plainly describes the Asthma continuing after the Fever was over, and the Asthma complicated with Epidemical Fevers, and then the Asthmatic have a dense or a thick Respiration.

If the Asthma be without a putrid Fever, Hippocrates calls it Meléweev Trevua, but Galen mistakes that, and calls it Eminesiv 23 b TURVOV,

auxver, because the Breath goes no farther than to the top, and not to the bottom of the Lungs: But it is plain, that the high Breathing is so called from the lifting up the Shoulders, and the Respiratio Sublimis is a rare, slow, and laborious high Respiration, by which Hippocrates distinguishes the Asthma, from πυανόν πνεύμα; he mentions the Inflation of the Hypochondria, and therefore calls the Asthmatic Πναμαδώδης.

Pain in the Respiratory Organs makes the Respiration small, because the Breast cannot be distended as in Pleurisies; 'tis also dense and quick, because of the Feverish Pulse.

The wanter of a second and the second and

in the a shirld a the

AP DIGERTARCS 20-

A. 第四王子和一上。62268

# A Scheme of the feveral Species of the Afthmas.

THE Afthma is a laborious Respiration, with lifting up the Shoulders, and Wheefing, from the Compression, Obstruction, or Coarctation of some Branches of the Bronchia, and some Lobes of the Bladders of the Lungs.

The Asthma is either continued or Periodical. The continued Asthma depends on the Compression of the Veins, and Bronchia, and Bladders of the Lungs, or Nerves;

1. By a Dropfy in the Breast.

2. By an Empyema, Inflammatory Tumour, or Abscess, or large Tuberculum.

3. By a Polypus in the Pneumonic Veffels, or Coagulation of Blood in the Veffels, or the Varicofenefs of the Veffels, or Plethora, by stop of the Hemorrhoides, and Menses, Issues, or Olcers, or Itch.

4. By Scones bred in the Trachea.

5. The Lungs may be compressed by Fat, or a Tumor of the Thymus.

6. By Gibbosiny, in which the Lungs are compressed by the Luxations of the Spina, and the sharpness of the Sternum: In these Hippocrates observes Tubercula in their Lungs, and that they are Kepxvisses.

7. By the Adhesion of the Lungs to the Diaphragme, and Pleura, and Pericardium.

8. By straining the Lungs by Running, the Membranes or Fibers, which fill the Interstices b 2 betwint

betwixt the Lobes of the Bladders, and are defigned to help the opening of the Bladders, may be injured; and then the Bladders remain contracted, by their reticular Muscles.

9. By the Tumours of the Belly in the Afcites, Tympanites, Hydrops Uteri; by the Tumours of the Liver, Spleen, Pancreas, Kidneys.

1

fn

1

hyit

fe

酌

N

Ceretate Places

are

EXTERNED ELOPERAN Some OC

10. By the Inflation of the Colon, Stomach, the depression of the Diaphragme is hindred.

II In Apoplectic Fits, Giddiness, Lethargy, some extravasate Serum oppresses the Nerves.

12. By a Windy Tumor of the Lungs, as it bappens in Broken Winded Horfes.

The Periodic Afthma depends on the Constri-Etion of the Bronchia, and Bladders of the Lungs, by windy Spirits, and succeeds these Diseases. 1. They succeed Fevers, Quartans, Small-Pox, Inflammation of the Langs, Intermitting Fevers.

2. A Catarrh.

3. Hysteric Fits.

4. Hypochondriac Fits.

4. An Ephemera, depending on the fix Non-naturals, especially the Air and Changes of Weather.

6. A flatulent Slimy Cacochymia, which is bred in the Stomach, and creates Inflations there, and gives an Effervescence in the Blood, and an Inflation in the Membranes of the Lungs; and this is the true Periodic flatulent Asthma.

Note, That the Continued Asthmas have frequently Faroxysms, by any great Motion, or the accident of Diet, or else in the Night; but they

are not regularly Periodic once in ten Days as the other be.

My design in this Treatife is chiefly to describe the Periodic Afthma, to which I have been long Subject, and that has given me many Opportunities. of confidering the History of that Disease more nicely than it was possible for Physicians, who have always an imperfect account of Chronical Cafes from their Patients; and to that I must impute their ill Success in many Chronical Diseases. I hope this Treatife will excite those Physicians, who are fubjest to Chronical Difeases, to observe nicely the History of their Disease, and to describe all its sensible Phanomena; to consider all the Antients successfully used in those Chronical Distempers. and to give the Publick a more exact Account from their own Experience and Observation of the History of their Chronical Distempers, which can only, by this means, be fully described; and never from the Relation of our Patients; and then any Ingenious Physician may from all the fensible Obfervations given, eafily take his Practical Notions. And though there be many Hypothefes to explain the sensible Phanomena, yet the Method of Pra-Elice being grounded on the Contrariety of the Remedies to some sensible Fault, in the solid or fluid Parts, the Candid and Rational Practifers cannot disagree in their Cure of Discases, which in all Ages will be the same. Though a defire of Novelty alters the Philosophy, and sometimes the Medicines, to the great Prejudice of Physic, whole useful Observations are thereby discredited, and experienced Medicines disused.

K.

I fhall not treat much of the Continued Afthmas, because they are depending on other Diseases, both in their Causes and Cures, which are well deseribed by many Authors; as for Instance, the Dropsy of the Breast: And for that the common Method of Cure is used, Purging by Pills of Cambogia, and the Pil. Lunares, and Elaterium, Diuretics, Salts, and with these may be complicated the Anti-Asthmatics, upoh the occasions of Fits; as the Oxymel, and Acetum Scylliticum, and Laudanum: But my chief Aim in these Symptomatic Asthmas, is the Curing the Original Disease, without which no Anti-Asthmatic can do any good.

I have in the following Treatife recommended a Difpensatory-Medicine, Acetum Scylliticum, which is a bitter Acid; (and that I sometimes make more grateful by Aromatics, or turning it into a Syrup with Sugar for nice Palates,) this gave me an occasion of considering the whole Class of Acids, and to propose a farther Tryal of other mixt Acids in the Asthma. The Acid Syrups and Oxymels I give in the Morning in a Glass of Water in the Summer, and the Aceta chiefly, if inauseous, at Night, for many Months.

and a toronal of these

SALLA BAE

## H Tame in Street Difeafer

## CONTENTS.

#### that interest is the CHAP. Level 1.

Ontaining a Description of the Symptoms preceding the Fits of the Flatulent Asthma, and of the Fits themselves, with the several Intervals betwixt them. Page 6

## CHAP. II.

Of the Preternatural State of the Chyle, and Blood, and Serum in the Afthma; and of the Rarefaction of the Animal Spirits, by an Effervescence in the Humours, which produces the Periodical Fits. 29 CHAP. III.

Of the evident Causes of the Asthmatic Fit; as Air, Diet, Exercise, Passion, &c. and of those Diseases on which the Asthma depends as a Symptom. 63

CHAP. IV.

Of the Cure of the Afthma, both in the Fit, and out of it. An Appendix about the Weighing of an Afth-

matic after Sanctorius's Manner : Also an Account of the Dissection of a Broken-Winded Mare. 201

#### ERRATA.

N the Ded. page 9. line 3. read irritated. In the Book p. 17. l. 21. r. arvis Temp. p. 18. l. 24. r. Gilead. p. 52. 1.29. r.cellulas. p. 59. 1.3. r. have fome. p.99. 1.12. r. bitter. p. 121. 1.23 and 26. f. add r. a.a. p. 145. 1.7. 1.3iv. p. 146. 1.27. r. Dofe. p. 152. 1.8. r. any parts. p. 158. 12. f. Dr. Waller r. Etmuller, 1.27. r. Constitution. p. 159. 1. 10. r. Peru. p. 166. 1.14. r. acrid. p. 167. 1. 26. dele dif. p. 169. 1.24. r.rettified. p. 170. 1.15. r. 3iii. p. 177. l. 20. r. Polygomum. p. 178. 1.14. r. Rhus. p. 179. 1. 8. r. to cool. p. 181. 1. 20. r. Cyathis, 1. 23. f. Arms r. Anus. p. 186. 1. 22. r. doubted. p. 187. l. 4. dele 3io. l. 8. r. 3iv. p. 188. l.g. r. Macis 3fs. 19 refervetur. p.190. 1.27. r. Lumbric. I.28. f. add 1. cum. p. 191. 1.9. r. 31s. 1. 10. f. gr. r. drops. 1. 13. r. drops, p. 192. l. 3. r. 3i. l. 9. r. 3ii. l. 17. f. 31s. r. 31s. l. 24. r. 3x. 1, 26, r. 3[s. p. 193. 1.24. r. Colour. p. 198. 1. 11. r. condemns. p. 199. l. 5. r. Ariteus. p. 200. l. ult. r. give it with two Spoonfuls of hot Vinegar. p. 205. add The best Medicines of the Antients, to the foreging Paragraph. p. 210. 1. 2. 1. Stale. p. 214. 1. 13. 1. purfed. p. 220. 1. 22. f. Smire Wine r. Smalledge. p. 222. l. 14. r. Colatura thii. p. 223. 1. 12. f. advene r. renes. p. 224. 1. 14. r. take 3fs. with 3yi. of Onymel.

28 1 2000

## Otton AcH T C REFACE

TREATISE

OFTHE

ASTHMA

(1)

Teice my Delign in this Ir

TOTHE

station of the state

SINCE the Cure of the Asthma is observed by all Physicians, who have attempted the Eradicating of that Chronical Diftemper, to be very difficult, and frequently unfuccessful; I may thence inferr, That either the true Nature of that Difeafe is not thoroughly understood by them, or they have not yet found out the Medicines by which the Cure may be effected. It

It is my Defign in this Treatife, to Enquire more particularly into the Nature of this Difeafe; and, according to that Notion I can give of it, to propofe those Methods and Medicines which appear to me most likely to effect its Cure, or, at least, to palliate it.

(2)

I have fuffered under the Tyranny of the Afthma at least Thirty Years, and therefore think my felf to be fully informed in the History of that Difease: And fince I have Practifed Phyfick, I have made many trials for the Relieving and Preventing of the Fits, and out of Compassion to those Miserable Patients, I design to relate what I have found useful both to my felf and others.

The Method I fhall take in this Difcourfe, is, Firft to deferibe the Symptoms preceding the Fit, and those which attend it, and the different Intervals of the Periodic Fit : And that this Hiftory of the Asthma may be more exact, I will give the History of my own Asthma, which I shall, for distinction fake, name the True Flatulent Asthma, and hereafter give my Reason for calling calling it fo. I have for many Years kept a Diary of that Difeafe, out of which I can give a more true Account, than if I had now Recollected what has long fince paffed.

(3)

I will afterwards give the Hiftory of the Afthma, which is commonly called Hysterical, from the Observations of an Ingenious Lady, who has fuffered under that Disease Twenty Years, and gave me that Account, in Writing an Answer to many Queries I sent her aabout it.

The Afthma is a long Difease, and it requires a long Observation to give a true Account of its Symptoms, Changes, and various Causes, which common Patients cannot nicely observe ; and therefore I thought it very necessary in the First Chapter of this Treatife, to give a full History of the Afthmatic Fits.

In the next Chapter I will defcribe the Vifcous and Flatulent Cacochymia of the Chyle, Chylous Lympha, Serum, and that Rarefaction of the Animal Spirits which give the chief Difpolition to the Fits of the true Afthma.

In

In the Third Chapter I will defcribe the Accidental Fits of the Afthma's depending on the Air; and its Changes; and fhew that they are real Fits of an Ephemera Fever, fuch as a flimy flatulent Blood, and windy Spirits, are capable of. And I will enumerate all the other evident Caufes, as Diet, Exercife, Paffions, &c. And I will there obferve the feveral Difeafes on which the Afthma depends, as a Symptom, and give fome Remarks for diffinguifhing the true Afthma from other Species of the Dyfpnea.

to forme very 1 ( 4 )

In the Fourth Chapter I will propofe the feveral Indications neceffary for the Cure of the Fits, and those which are to be perfued for the preventing their Returns; I will observe what I have found injurious to that Disease, and describe those Medicines I have found most Beneficial.

I have frequently compared my Obfervations of my Afthma, with those of my Patients, and found them much alike: But some variety of Symptoms have appeared in all I have Discoursed. I have put my Notion of the Disease

to

## (5)

to fome very intelligent Affhmatics; and they agree with me that there is a flight Fever, and windy Rarefaction of Humours in the Fit, which I call an Effervescence; and this will be confirmed by the Medicines I use, which are of that Taste, which Experience has observed to succeed well in the Cure of the Flatulency of our Humours, and their Rarefactions, by an Effervescence.

The strange of the start of the

N. Stadfarnoon which precedity

the fat of the Platulent Moments ( which is commonly called the

sund, or Spectrage A (figma) about

Affhinatics are fenfible of a great front-

nels, or which about the Bit of the Stor-

mach, which is then much oppresed.

with Wind, and an minud Ruchusteins.

nom ing and this fulness the Steinnene

AHAD OFE any CEUBI OF SERIES LIES

Improved in the Lungar, This Fundant

at the permacir feenistaning to dependin

partity outshe Wardy Rangingfiton contras

The appeared again I have I stanisted.

## as liss & CHAP. I. amon

the Fever, and windy learning

(6)

mone very mealineat

Containing a Description of the Symptoms preceding the Fits of the Flatulent Assima, and of the Fits themselves, with the several Intervals betwixt them.

N the Afternoon which precedes the Fit of the Flatulent Afthma (which is commonly called the Humid, or Spitting Afthma) about two or three hours after Meat, most Afthmatics are fensible of a great straitnefs, or fulnefs about the Pit of the Stomach, which is then much oppreffed. with Wind, and an infipid Ructus rifes from it; and this fulnefs of the Stomach is the first fign of the enfuing Fit; it appears before any Cough or Straitness happens in the Lungs. This Fulnefs at the Stomach feems to me to depend partly on the Windy Rarefaction of the DI-

## (7)

Digefting Meat contained in its Cavity, and also on the Inflation of the Nervous Fibres of the Skins of the Stomach.

An Effervescence in the Blood fucceeds this Inflation of the Stomach; for these Afthmatics are obscurely hot in the Night, and cannot bear the heat of the Bed-Cloths on their Breasts; all hot things diforder them more, as fitting by the Fire, Wine, Tobacco, all cool Liqours, as Water, relieve the Fulnefs at Stomach; the Iffues are generally inflamed before the Fits, and very fore and bleed : There appears a great Dulnefs and Fulnefs of the Head, with a flight Head-ach, and great Sleepinefs towards the Evening before the Fit, and frequently great Retchings and Yawning many times, and towards Night a great quantity of pale Water is made, and the fame pale Water all that Night, and also all the first day of the Fit; but though the Water be pale before, and in the beginnings of the Fits, yet it is as high coloured after it, and appears plainly to have a Feverish Colour and Sediment. ways appear to be much opprefied with.

Phlegin

After

## (8)

· After this obfcure Effervescence in the Blood, fucceeds a Rarefaction of the Spirits in the Nerves, and Membranes of the Lungs themfelves, for they feel rigid, stiff, or inflated; there is a great Reftlefnefs on the Spirits all the Day before the Fit; the Head feems filled with Fumes, or Serous Humours, with fome pain; the Limbs appear heavy and unfit for motion, the Breaft has the fame weight and heavinefs as appears in the Limbs, the Althmatic feem to fuck in their Breath, and wheeze a little towards Night : This Straitness of Breath feems to be for want of an eafy Infpiration; the Diaphragme cannot Contract it felf to move downwards, and that occafions a laborious Breathing to draw in Air; the Trachea, or its Bronchia, have their Membranous and Nervous Fibres Contracted, by which the Wheezing is made in Expiration. The Affhmatic feem to have a Convulfive Cough before the Fit, and fometimes a little flimy Phlegm is spit up, but both of them are very inconfiderable. The Lungs in the Humid Afthma do not always appear to be much opprefied with Phlegm Afice T

## (9)

Phlegm before the Fit, and at the end of the Fit, the Straitness goes off before any confiderable quantity of Phlegm is spit up, which would not happen if the Straitness depended on a great quantity of Phlegm.

At first waking, about one or two of the Clock in the Night, the Fit of the Afthma more evidently begins, the Breath is very flow, but after a little time more strait, the Diaphragme feems stiff, and tied, or drawn up by the Mediastinum. It is not without much difficulty moved downwards, but for enlarging the Breaft in Infpiration, the Intercoltal Mufcles which ferve for the raifing of the Ribs, and lifting up the Breaft, ftrive and labour more vehemently, and the Scapular and Lumbar Muscles, which ferve for ftrong Infpiration, join all their force, and strain themselves to lift up the Breast and Shoulders, for the enlarging the Cavity of the Breast, that the Lungs may have a place fufficient for their Expansion, and the Air may more plentifully infpire and in the oblight of an val

that indined or namenily overlibridaria

The

## ( 10 )

The Affhmatic is immediately neceffitated to rife out of his Bed, and fit in an erect Polture, that the weight of the *Viscera* may pull down the Diaphragme.

The Muscles which ferve for Expiration cannot eafily perform the Contraction of the Thorax, being hindred in that by the Stiffness or Inflation of the Membranes in the Thorax; for though the Afthmatic expire more eafily than they can draw in their Breath, yet the Expiration is very flow and leafurely, and Wheezing, and the Afthmatic can neither Cough, Sneeze, Spit, or Speak freely; and in the Afthmatic Fit the Mulcular Fibres of the Bronchia and Vesicula of the Lungs are Contra-Ated, and that produces the Wheezing Noife, which is most observable in Expiration : But it is evident to me, that all the Lobes of the Lungs are not conftringed alike. For in the Fit I could never breath tolerably, if I lay or leaned on the Left fide, which made me very fenfible that all my Straitnefs lay on the Right fide of my Lungs, and that inclined or naturally occasioned me to

#### (11)

to lie on that fide during the Fit; but after the Fit was over, I always lie eafieft on the Left fide: I perceive the Right fide to be most affected in my Cafe, and from the nceall the Spit does plainly rife when the Fit goes off.

After the Fit is begun, the Stomach fuffers a great Inflation of its Mulcular Membranes, and alfo a great Rarefation of its Contents; and this Flatuofity oppofes the defcent of the Diaphragme, and ftraitens the Breath much more. If the Fits be Extreme, the Afthmatic often Vomits green or yellow Choler: Cold Liquors beft agree with the Stomach; and hot Liqours, whether Vinous or naturally hot, make the Flatuofity, very Vehement, and Suffocating.

I must observe that the Fit of the Asthma happens often after Purging, Vomiting, or Fasting, when none or few Contents are in the Stomach, and then this Flatuosity must be a Nervous affection of the Membranes: But I cannot but confess, that if any Surfeit or Fulness be in the Stomach, when the Asthma Fit first seizes, the Danger of it

## (12)

it is very great, and the Fit very Violent and longer, with much more Flatuofities.

The Afthmatick is extremely hot, burning and inclined to Sweat, as in the Fit of a Fever, and his Pulfe is quick, though unequal; and all the Feverish Symptoms continue during his keeping in Bed, which is not fafe in a ftrong Fit, nor tolerable to the Afthmatic, who is neceffitated to rife into the cool Air; and after he is rifen out of Bed, a loofe Stool frequently happens from the great working in the Belly, occafioned by the Fit: And I have often heard the Afthmatic complain, that the Fits of Inflation fall lower in their Bellies than ordinary, and then the Fits go off with less shortness of Breath, and a breaking Wind downwards, with fome Stools.

The Motion of the Muscles of the Heart is altered or stop'd by the Fit; for the Pulse is weak and intermitting, and the Hands and Feet cold, for want of a free Circulation, and the Face often blackish by the Stagnation of the Blood in it, and for the fame reason the Afthmatic matic are very much fubject to Swooning, and Palpitation of the Heart, because the Blood Vessels are constringed, as well as the Bronchia, by the Inflation of the Nerves and Membranes; for the Par Vagum sends Branches both to the Heart and Lungs, and Orifice of the Stomach, where the first Nervous effects, or Inflations begin, and that by the same Nerves is communicated to the Heart and Lungs and Membranes of the Breast.

BLEAR ( EI ) FIL VERY VIO-

The Intercostal Nerves are also affected; for that communicates with the *Par V agum* Fibres, by which also the Nerves of the Guts are inflated in the Fit, and that fends Branches to the *Gula*, which can fearce swallow in the Fit, but it makes a Noise like breaking of Wind. From these Nerves come the Inflations in the Belly and Stomach and the frequent Eructations.

The Lips feem to be drawn into a pofture for Sucking, the Eyes feem to ftart, and fhed Tears involuntarily, which frequently colour the Skin near the Eyes yellow, or blackifh, the Face is pale or livid, the Muscles of the whole Body

## (14)

Body feem to fubfide, or lofe their Plumpnefs, for want of the Circulation of Blood through them, and all Motion of the Limbs is languid.

tip

2

op

ne

Fi

me

thr

RO

up

of

After fome continuance of the Fits the Head often Aches much, and is very dull, and troubled with dreaming Fancies, and that this depends on the ftopping the Circulation, may be proved, becaufe Combing the Head backward very much relieves it, by promoting the Circulation that way; the Afthmatic during the Fit have a great dullnefs to fleep, but fleep little till the Fit has spent the Windy Spirits; and in the first day of the Fit they have often broken fleep fitting in a Chair, leaning on one fide, or forward, but cannot lean backwards: A ftrait Room, and a fire in it, are extraordinary offenfive, as wellas any Duft, or ill Smell during the Fit; and all things heated by the fire, or of a vinous Nature; and all things which oppress or straiten the Breaft, encrease the Suffocation.

If the Fit last but two or three hours after rising out of Bed, the straitness abates, and some raw Gelly like Phlegm, like

#### (15)

like the White of an Egg, or the Solution of Gum Tragacanth, is fpit up, both in the Humid and Old Hyfteric Afthma, and that is ftreaked with black, like a Feather, or Spiders Web.

When a fhort Fit happens, it is accompanied only with Wind, and Spitting, with a feverifh quick Pulfe, and a difpolition to Sweat, and the Water is higher coloured in the Morning, no oppreffion at the Stomach precedes, nor no pale Water, and but a little fleepinefs over Night : This I call a Spitting Fit; fuch as my Afthma was before it fetled into Periods. And these Fits depended on Diforders in Diet, and Accidents of Weather; and appeared to me a Fit of an Ephemera Fever.

If the Fits continue long, viz. two, three, or four days, the first two days none or little Phlegm is spit up, but on the third or sourth day it is Cough'd up somewhat digested, and less viscid, of a white, greeniss, or yellow Colour; and in old Afthmatics, sweet in Taste like Blood, or Liquoriss, or else a little putrid, saltiss, or acid; and the Spit of the Afthmatic is often streaked with Blood. The

#### (16)

The Fits ufually go off in three, four or five Days clearly, fo that little Phlegm is fpit afterwards, till the next Fit.

The occafion of fetled Periodic Fits in my felf, were an Intermitting Fever; of thefe I kept a Calander for feven Years, that I might better obferve their Intervals, and their refpect to the Moon and Weather; and fuch Phyfick I ufed for them. The Obfervations I made thence are as follow.

I observed that in the Winter were fixteen Fits, but in the Summer Months I had twenty Fits; and in the Summer the Fits were more sharp and longer, and that I spit more digested Phlegm then: In *August* I always had the severest Fits. The longer the Fits, the greater the Intervals; the long Fits lasted 3, 4, or 5 days; the shorter the Fits, the shorter were the Intervals.

The fhort Intervals were 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7 days; the longeft Intervals 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, or 15 days. The Winter Months I reckon from September till March, and from thence to September the Summer Months.

In

#### (17)

In Rainy Weather or towards Snow, and in the Foggy, I am frequently fenfible of a great straitness at the Stomach, fo that fuch Weather gives an Inclination to a Fit before either the Rain or Snow fall; but in all that kind of Weather I fometimes missed a Fit.

The Fits ufually returning once in a Fortnight, they frequently happen near the Change of the Moon ; but I could not perceive they kept any certain times either before or after, but fometimes they happened near an equal diffance from both the Changes; but, I believe, as the feveral Phafes of the Moon alter the Weather, by that means it produces fome Alterations on the Spirits of the Althmatic.

Helmont observes the Influence the Moon has on an Asthmatic; Exacerbatur Luna stationibus, & avi tempestatibus, quas ideo prasentit & prasagit. And I always upon unexpected Fits, found some great Change of Weather to succeed.

Horstius mentions a Young Asthma= tic, Qui crescente Luna afficitur anhelalatione crebra.

Summer the Summer

## (18)

A Change from a Frost to a Thaw frequently gave me a Fit, with a Rheumatic Pain in the Temples.

A change of the Wind into the East often produced a Fit.

- In the Intervals of the Fits I unfuccefsfully tried these Medicines. I drank many Pectoral Drinks, as Gill and Hyf-Jop, and fometimes Rue in Diet-Drinks; the last was good for the Wind, but troubled my Spirits; I used Syrup of Garlick, Syrup of Sulphur, Tincture of Gum Ammoniacum in Elder-flower Water, Tineture of Lavender, Spirit of Hartsborn: Broom Beer agreed with me better than Gill, or its Juice. I tried Myrrh thus, Be Myrrh Bij. Mellis Bij. Croci Bis. Nucis moschat 3ss. Misce. This is an Excellent Pectoral, but hot : I tried Saffron Lozenges thus; R Crucipulv. 31. Saoch thi. -I tried Flores Sulphuris, and Flores Ben--zon. in Lozenges.

I finoaked Amber with my Tobacco, I used all kind of Balfams, Gilded Balf. Peruvianum; 3i. Solut. in thi. Syr. Balf. Balf. Sulph. Amifat, Succinat, Terebinthinat, Tinct. Sulph. with Syrap of Ground-Ivy. I tried Lime Water; Infusions

#### (19)

fusions of Millepedes, Decoction of Sarfa, Drinks with Horehound this. to fix Gallons. 3th to 8 Jack.

I drank the Span Waters to my Injury, the Stipticity of the Steel proved injurious. I tried Extracted Ecphracticum at Night, and at other times Vitriolum Martis diffolved in Milk Water; and a very fevere Fit difcouraged my farther use of Steel.

I often Vomited, Bled, Purged in the Intervals, but found no Relief by any of these methods.

None of the preceding Methods would fucceed, but increased the feverity of my Fits: At last I Vomited once in a Month, I took fix Ounces of the Cortex infused in Wine, and after that three Ounces of Ammoniacum diffolved in Oxymels. This method relieved me for three or four months in the Winter, but at last proved unfuccefsful, and the Fits returned as bad as ever. I drank Affes Milk, which increafed my Phlegm, and stop'd up my Lungs. Next Summer I drank the Waters at Bath, where indeed I had no Fit; but they returned feverely when I came Home. but as of as I came into it

I found

Tvasive A.S. I was mually viliced

I found I had read most of the Modern Writers, and hitherto had tried their Methods, and hot Pectorals, and Cephalics in vain; I believed, by my ill fuccess in their way, that they never understood this Difease; and therefore turned over some of the Old Writers, Galen, Ægineta, Ætims, &c. where I found more rational Notions, and was directed by them to the use of that Medicine which does very much relieve and prevent my Fits, of which I will hereaster give an account.

B

bi

C

(20)

I cannot remember the first Occasion of my Afthma, but have been told that it was a Cold when I first went to School: As my Afthma was not Hereditary from my Ancestors, so, I thank God, neither of my two Sons are inclined to it, who are now past the Age in which it seized me. I at first was only troubled with it at the great Changes of the Year, and preferved my felf tolerably in Health for fome Years, by taking Purging Pills frequently: I never had any confiderable Fit in Oxford for Twelve Years that I lived there, which I imputed to the clearnefs of that Air, and the spare Diet there; but as oft as I came into Staffordsbire, into my Native Air, I was usually visited with with a fevere Fit or two : The Air of a Town makes the Fits more fevere when they happen, but I do not think the Afthmatic fo much exposed to the Accidents of the Weather in a City, as in the Country : The Afthma being a Fever Fit, all hot Regimens and hot Air, fuch as that of a City, may difpose some lean hot Bodies to Coughs, and confequently Fits; but I could never observe my Fits to come oftner in London than in the Country, only I find them more fevere in a close Air, as they would be in a close hot Room, when they happen,

I have met with fome Afthmatics, who have been fo for fifty Years, as they informed me, and yet in tolerable Health, without any confiderable decay of their Lungs, or difability to perform their ufual Employments, which I oft reflect on to Encourage my Patients, and my felf, who yet can Study, Walk, Ride, and follow my Employment, Eat and Drink and Sleep as well as ever I could; neither am I yet fenfible of any Decay in my Lungs, though I believe all old Afthmatics have feveral Tubercula there, and the Glands of the Trachea are much Relaxed by the frequent Defluxion of a Mu-C 3 cus

cus through them ; but the frequent Expectorations carry off the fulnels of Humours, and I have observed very few to die of the Asthma Fit, but the frequency of that often occasions Consumptions in lean Habits, and Dropsies, Lethargies, or Inflammations of the Lungs in fatter Constitutions, which prove fatal.

(22)

th

b

山

T

Enquiries fent to an Ingenious Lady troubled with an Hysteric Asthma, and her Answers to them.

Quere 1. What was the first occasion of your Hysteric Afthma?

Anfwer. The Affliction I had by the Lofs of my Father threw me into a violent Fever, which happened in the Spring, I being then 14 Years old; and about that time Twelve-month into Fits of the Mother, and those of several forts, as Raving, Laughing, and Silent; and in one of these Fits Tobacco being blown on my face recovered me; but in other Fits this being repeated, I found my Breath become streight: This difficulty of breathing was much more uneasy to me than any of the Fits of the Mother. And after this I was troubled fometimes with the

# ((23))

the one, and fometimes with the other: But after I was married, which was about 22, I never had any Fits of the Mother, other than Shortnefs of Breath : Though the trouble I have mentioned produced thefe Fits, yet I cannot but acknowledge I might have fome Difpofition to the Afthma from my Father, who was alfo troubled with a Shortnefs of Breath.

Quere 2. What Alteration has happened in the manner of your Fits?

The first Fits I had generally lasted me 36 Hours, but I never had more than three or four Fits in one Year: But coming from London into the Country, I had them frequently; and in the beginning of July they feized me violently every morning at two a Clock, and held me in great Extremity five or fix Hours, and went off generally at Noon; and after that, till the next Fit, I was tolerably well, but for feven weeks time I never went into Bed till after my Fit was off. I flept in a Chair leaning on a Table, which I use to this day, and find it the eafieft when my Breath is indifposed; for many times my Wheezing will leave me in fleeping thus; but if I lean back but a little, C 4

# ((24))

little in a Chair to fleep, or in my Bed raifed with Pillows, I fhall Wheeze the more.

Quere 3. What Signs preceded your Fits, as Head-ach, pale Water; and in what manner did the Fits hold you, how many days, and what Spit after?

My Straitnefs or Hardnefs of Breathing is betwixt the Breaft and Pit of my Stomach; but indeed my Arms, Shoulders, and all my Upper Parts are generally uneafy. I never Spit in any Fit, or afterward, unlefs my Fit comes upon catching Cold, then at the going off I fpit white Phlegm, with black ftreaks like Feathers; but I am not now fo fubject to Cold as formerly.

My Head is always well in the Fit, except in the long one I mentioned, when it was benummed in the hind Part, and my Eyes dim when the Fit went off. If I be fleepy on a fudden, a Fit generally follows; I obferved no quantity of Water before the Fits, but always a great quantity of pale Water in the Fit; but it is high coloured as the Fit goes off.

Quère 4. What Medicines have relieved you most, and what did you find Injurious to you?

At

#### (25)

At the first, Spirit of Castor in fair Water relieved me, and Hysterical mixture by Dr. Hewet of Lichfield, in the Year 76. Then Treacle Water; afterwards Prince Rupert's Drops; fometimes Spirit of Hartshorn did well; but in my long fit I mentioned above, it made me worfe, and I fell into a fort of Convulsion with it, and never took it fince. Dr. Hollins gave me all the Varieties of Hyfterical Medicines, Juleps, foetid Pills, and Plaifters, but none of them gave me the least Relief; but I continued out of my Bed for feven Weeks; at laft I took half a Dram of the Jefuits Powder in a Cordial Water, and that first Dofe relieved me, fo fenfibly, that it feem'd to prefs down the stoppage of my Breath, and by repeating that Morning and Evening, I perfectly Recover'd, and fince I find the fame Medicine more beneficial to me than any other for preventing my Fits. Any thing of Strong Waters or that is hot, or any Stink much offend me in my Fits.

Quere 5. What Feverishness attends your Fits?

In my long fit I had no Fever; and in that fit Purging difturbed me extreamly; in other fits my Hands are fometimes very hot,

#### (26)

hot, and at the going off, my Water is very high colour'd, and breaks much. I have had a Fever four Years ago without any fhortnefs of Breath, but as foon as that left me, the Afthma return'd.

Quere 6. What Accidents of Weather or Diet occasion your Fits?

05 BD

I have found London Air, and that of Holland, agree best with me, and by going into a sharp Air I have immediately fallen into shortness of Breath, particularly in my going from London to Epfom; but upon my return next day to London I was very well. I have had severe fits in London, none in Holland, but a little Heavines, which the Jesuits Pouder put off immediately. Eating a Supper, or any thing in an Asternoon, occasions my fits; but in the beginning of my fits, Supper agreed well with me.

## POSTSCRIPT,

My Fits have often return'd, and the Jefuits Bark never fail'd Relieving me for ten Years; afterward the Bark fometimes fail'd me, and then I bled oft.

About 15 Years ago Spring and Fall I took Steel for eight Weeks, and Purged once once a Week in that courfe with Hierapiera; for all Potions were more apt to bring a fit. After fome Years I took Steel without Purging, which made me worfe, fo that I then left it off; but when I took it with Purging I was better.

(27)

Four Years ago after my Fever, I began to take ftrong Purgers of Sena and Buckthorn two days together, once in a Fortnight, and to Vomit with Carduus once in a Month., which with the off repeating of the Bark kept off my fit Nine Months together, but Itill in *July* and *August* I have fome Return of my fits, but of no great continuance, and very feldom violent. About fix or eight Years ago I fpit in my fits, but fince my Purging I fpit no more than I did at firft, twenty Years ago.

I have omitted to mention this, that my fits never feize me but in the Night, and then awake me with a heavinefs, and fo grow worfe and worfe immediately. I am always most easy when I am Lac'd, and my fit goes frequently off on a fudden, fo as to be perfectly well in half an hours time. I have lately had two easy fits, which I impute to Purging and Vomiting before they came. If If I may give fome Rationale on this Lady's Afthma, I believe the Intermitting Fever laid the Foundation of it, and the Reliques of that by the trouble mentioned, was turned into the Nerves, and gave her Hyfteric Fits; and those being difturbed by the smoak of Tobacco, which is yet extremely offensive to her if she smell it : Or elfe the Disposition from her Father, laid the Foundation of an Hysteric Afthma, which at present receives no Relief by Steel, or Hysteric Medicines, but by Vomits, strong Purges, and frequent Repetitions of the Cortex.

CHAP.

ne

# CHAP. II.

(29)

Of the Preternatural State of the Chyle, and Blood, and Serum in the Afthma; and of the Rarefaction of the Animal Spirits, by an Effervefcence in the Humours, which produces the Periodical Fits.

THAT the Preternatural State of the Chyle in the Afthma is a Flatulent Crudity, appears becaufe all flatulent things, as new Beer, Turneps, Cabbage, and all Roots which have a Mucilage and Acrimony mixt, very much difagree with the Afthmatic, by irritating the Spirits, and creating a Windinefs in the Stomach, and they also affect the Nerves.

Frequent Eructations precede the Fits of the Afthma, and a Fulness is commonly complained of in the Stomach before the Fits.

That the ill state of Chyle supplies the new Matter before the fit of the Asthma appears,

#### (30)

appears, because the Oppression at the Stomach, and some small straitness of Breath happens within two or three hours after Dinner; and the Exacerbation of the fit happens in the Night, about two a Clock, when the Chyle is most plentiful in the Blood; and no other Humour is so capable of Fermentation and Flatuosity as the Chyle is: For if the Chyle be not perfectly digested by a thorough Fermentation, it resembles new Ale unripe, which is very Windy; and this causes the fame Inflation that the other does in the Primavia.

The Agitation of the Spirits, and their Expansion of the fermenting Mass, produces the fermentation and disfolution of the Meat in the Stomach; which being either deficient, or elfe ftopt in their motion by a vilcid Slime, the Spirits remain Inviscated in the roapy Liquor, and there raise Bubbles, which we call Wind.

It is commonly observed, that fulness of Diet, and all Debauches, render the Fits most severe, and a temperate Diet make the Fits more easy. I have heard fome Objections against the Digestion of Meats by a fermentation in the Stomach, to which I will give the Solutions following. 'Tis

## (31)

'Tis objected that Fruit and new Wine are eafily fermented, but not eafily digefted, which they ought to be if Digeftion was made by a fermentation.

To this I may answer, that that kind of Diet eafily raifes Windiness in the Stomach, and therefore fome fermentation happens after eating thereof, which occafions the Ructus, and Swelling of the Stomach, and 'tis rather an excels of fermentation to which that kind of Diet is fubject, which produces the Fevers, Vomitings, and Fluxes to those that use it, than a defect of the Digestion or Fermentation. And, as we observe, Wines may be under-fermented and crude, or elfe over-fermented or acid ; fo we must acknowledge two contrary faults in Digeftion, the one when the Meat is crude, flimy, windy, acerb; or elfe when the Meat is over digefted, and becomes acid, bitter, salt, putrid.

'Tis further objected, that Bones, Flesh, Fat, and putrid things are easily digested, and yet difficultly fermented.

To this I may Anfwer, That Fat is of all things the most difficultly digested, and as difficultly fermented : I have observ'd Suet to lie in the Stomach of a Dog fed with it, twelve twelve hours undigefted, and very little altered as I found when I open'd him. Fat Meats often go whole through the Body unaltered ; and Butter is heavy or hard of Digeftion to many Stomachs: As to Bones they lie long in the Stomach before their diffolution ; 'tis their Gelly they are refolved into by digeftion that is fermented in the Stomach, but the hard Parts go off undiffolved in the Fœces.

( 32 )

ma

is

AL

ma

im

mo

by

Co

yie

are

me

to

tal

A

ma

the

Wh

Wh

m

the

00

四位

In

int

The New Digefter diffolves them into Broth, by Heat, rarifying the Air included in their Pores, and in their Juices, and the gentle heat of the Stomach in a lower degree, and a longer time rarifies the Air in the Animal Juices contain'd in the Bones, which may occafion the folution of the folid parts of the Bones, and a full digeftion of the Liquors iffuing from them.

Putrid things are eafily digefted, becaufe half fermented, and therefore they are apt to ferment too much in our Stomachs, and occafion Surfeits.

Flesh Meats are easily made putrid, and that is the highest degree of Fermentation. The external Heat of the Hen Colliquates the Humours contained in the Egg when 'tis hatching ; and if the formation

### (33)

mation of the Fœtus mifcarries, nothing is more putrid; which is an evident proof of a Fermentation in Animal Humours: And if the Digeftion of Flefh in the Stomach be obferved, the Fœtor and Acid fmell from a Carnivorous Stomach may more plainly prove the diffolution of it, by a putrefactive Fermentation.

The common Objection is, That the Contents of the Stomach, when diftill'd, yield no inflammable Spirit, and therefore are not fermented.

To this I may answer, That no Aliments flay long enough in the Stomach to be perfectly fermented; and till Vegetables are perfectly fermented to a fharp Acidity, they do not yield their inflammable Spirits; but the Fermentation in the Stomach is continued but fome few hours for the diffolution of the Meat. which is then carried out into the Guts, where the Choler and falt Lympha being mixt with the Chylous Mafs, a ftop may thereby be given to all farther Putrefaction of it. But that an inflammable Spirit may be distilled from Animal Humours fully prepared, appears by a remarkable Instance given in the Collectanea Chymica, in the Anatomy of the Bile, where the Author

1

Author describes a volatile Spirit from Choler diffilled in B. M. which is inflammable like Spirit of Wine.

D L the quy the free

cu

Son the Son by Party H The Son the S

(34)

Not only the Chyle and Alimentary Mass in the Stomach and Intestines have their preternatural State, but the Lympha Lactea (which is a Chylous Humour leparated from the Chyle by the Mucous Glands in the Stomach and Lungs) is too crude, flimy and flatulent, and thereby less fit to promote the Fermentation of the Meat in the Stomach. This is evident and visible if a Vomit be given to an Althmatic, a great quantity of this frothy, crude, or flimy Mucilage is evacuated; and this way a great eafe is given to the Paroxysms, some Matter of the Difease being evacuated, which increased the Inflation of the Stomach; and this viscid Saburra in the Stomach is most observable in old Afthmatics, both in those that have the Spitting and Hysterical Afthma.

In the Spitting Afthma this flimy Lympha is very evident, and gives the Matter of the vifcid Phlegm ufually fpit up at the end of the Fit : It at first appears clear, like a Solution of Gum Tragacanth, but after fome days like the vifcid

#### (35) viscid and digested Phlegm in a Cold. All kinds of vifcid gummofe Meats or Drinks ftop and oppress the Stomach and Lungs of the Afthmatic, and occasion their Fits, which is by fupplying a great quantity of viscid Chyle and Lympha, which will not eafily circulate through the Lungs of the Afthmatic, which are frequently obstructed by crude Tubercula. The Serum is made of the Chyle, and therefore must have the fame kind of Flatulency and Sliminess as the Chyle has, In the hot Scorbutical Temperaments 'tis deficient and vifcid, which occafions either Tubercula or Inflammations in the Lungs; or elfe'tis too waterish in the Hydropical, or very apt to Effervescences in the Hyfterical and Hypochondriacal. The pale Water in the Fit is the thinner part of the Serum occasion'd by some Constriction of the Lymphatics. For as in the Fits of the Stone, the Urine is pale, becaufe of the Constriction of the Lymphatics, through which the remaining Serum ought to be carried off, upon the Secretion of part of it through the Kidneys; but the Pain caufes that Constriction : And in the Afthma, the Inflations, by stopping the Circulation of the Serum through 2

e

Uľ.

US

B

n

is

to

is

m

he

oft

mal

my he it

P-

14.

he

id

### ( 36 )

through the Lymphatics, occafion this great Diabetes in the Afthma; as will hereafter be more fully explain'd.

This defect of Digeftion and Mucilaginous Slime in the Stomach, are very obvious, and obferv'd by Writers, and were fuppofed the immediate caufe of the Afthma; but their ill fuccefs with Pectorals and Digeftives, occafions my doubt of that Affertion; efpecially fince I can deduce the Afthma from a more probable Caufe, and fhew that the mentioned Alterations of the Humours, are produced by the long continuance of it, and do not produce the Fits of the Afthma, but only make them worfe, or difpofe us to them.

All Chronical Caufes, as the Gout, Confumptions, & produce the fame vifeid Saburra, with Windinefs in the Stomach, and yet are not ufually attended with Afthmatic Fits, and the Inflammation of the Lungs, the Tubercula in Confumptions, the great clog of Phlegm in Catarrhs, ftuff and opprefs the Lungs, and occafion a Dyfpnæa, but do not commonly give Afthma Fits; and therefore we mult feek for fome other Caufe of them.

The

PIL

Bo

Di

He

the

Th

Cl

Al

211

Fit

infe

liti

SVI

he

tin

27

00

Pa

for

the

21

助

Dre

# ent noilmoon (37)

The Blood of Afthmatics is very fubject to Effervescences; and whatsoever produces that, occasions the Fits; as great Heats or Cold, violent Motions of the Body or Mind, any Excess in Eating and Drinking, or Venereal Pleafures; the Heat of the Bed, the Changes of the Weather to Rain, Snow, or from Frost to a Thaw; the Alteration of Clothes, the Changes of the Air at Spring and Fall: All these are causes of the Fever we call an Ephemera, and they also produce the Fits of the Afthma; from whence I may infer, that the Nature of the Afthma confifts in a flow Effervescence, or Ebullition of our Blood, on which the feveral Symptoms of that Difease depend.

d

to

It,

1-

0

ad

13-

11-

in

35,

n.

ore

of

he

The common Ephemera happens in a healthful state of Blood, when 'tis not ' tinctured by any morbid Cacochymia; and that Ebullition is attended with the common Symptoms of Fevers; as Heat, Pains, quick and high Pulse, Thirst, and fometimes high-colour'd Water ; But in the Afthma, the Effervescence happens in a mucilaginous state of Humours, and therefore the Heat is fometimes obfcure, the Urine pale, the Pulse quick but oppreffed, fome Pains in the Head, or Heavinefs

D 3

# (38)

nefs attends it; and if the Patient keep his Bed in the beginning of the Fit, they are very hot, and inclinable to Sweat; and at the latter end of the Fit, the Urine has evidently a feverifh Sediment.

The great Conftriction of the Pulmonic Arteries, and the other Blood Veffels, as well as the Heart it felf, in the Fit, ftops the Pulfe of Afthmatics, and that deprefies the feverifh Ebullition, and prevents the Heat, high Pulfe, and high colour'd Urine at first.

The quick and strong motion of the Heart promotes the Ebullition in Fevers; and if by Opiates we can stop the violent Pulfation, the Efferverscence confiderably subsides.

That the Nerves may ftop the Circulation very much in the Afthma, is evident by the frequent Circumvolutions they have about the Blood Veffels near the Lungs. And fince the Nerves make an evident conftriction on the Bronchia during the Fit, we may obferve by the intermitting Pulfe, that they make the fame fort of Ligature upon the Arteries, and thereby check the high Effervefcence of the Althmatic Fever. th

TC:

fter

cip

10

fel

ŎD

Blo

tu

VE

pt

th

'n

th

F

# (39)

The ferment of this Affhmatic Fever is the flatulent Succus Nutriticus, which by reafon of fome Crudity is not fully digefted into Blood, but is thence eafily precipitated by the changes of the Air, Diet, or other external Accidents ; or elfe of it felf, like as in other intermitting Fevers, once in 10 Days it feparates from the Blood, and by making its Confiftence turbid, it produces in it an obfcure Effervefcence, by which the feveral great Symptoms of the Afthma are produced.

15t. A great quantity of pale Urine is thrown off by that Effervescence.

2dly. A flatulent Lympha is evacuated into the Stomach and Guts, which raifes the Alimentary Mafs there into violent Flatulencies, like Wine over flummed.

3dly. The Glands of the Trachea and Veliculæ of the Lungs receive part of the mucilaginous flatulent nutritious Juice feparated from the Blood by the Effervefcence : For the occafion of this Symptom in the Spitting Afthma, is the Weaknefs left in those Glands, which they contracted from that Inflammation of the Lungs, which produces the Spitting Afthma.

4thly. The more fpirituous part of this flimy and flatulent nutritious Juice paffes D 4 through

10

#### (40)

through the Nerves, being forced by the Effervescence, and there, because of the flimy Vehicle of the flatulent Spirits, difficulty circulates through the Nerves, but fills them, and causes an Inflation in the Membranes of the Breast, and Lungs, and Stomach.

The Nerves of the Breaft were formerly weakned by fome Dyfpnæa, occafioned by Inflammation of the Lungs, or fome Hyfterical Convultion, and thereby loft their Tone, and became too open for the admitting of flatulent, unripe, or undigefted Spirits from the Blood ; and this predifpolition determines the Flux of windy Spirits chiefly into the Pulmonic Nerves.

When I have been in a Fit of the Afthma, I have ferioufly confider'd all the Symptoms defcribed, and always believ'd from my fenfe and feeling of the Difeafe, that the Fit depended on an inward burning Heat which occafioned them, fo that I am fully convinc'd that the Afthma Fit is a Fit of a Fever.

Carolus Piso affirm'd this long fince; and Sennertus could not believe the Afthma to be without a Fever: He fays, Est blanda febris & halituosa, qualis etiam alios morbos

#### (41)

morbos à fervore & motu serosi humoris ortos, ut Arthritidem, Catarrhos, & hujusmodi fluxiones, alias comitatur.

The Modern Phyficians have obferv'd many Intermitting Fevers to lurk under the Difguife of Chronical Difeafes, as Coughs, Cholicks, Head-achs, Fits of the Mother, and Swooning Fits; and the feverifh Heat, quick Pulfe, and high colour'd Water difappears, till the Blood be raifed to a higher Digettion, or Fermentation: The fame is often the cafe of the Afthma; the Effervefcence is in the Blood, decay'd by fome former Difeafe, which occafions the Water to be pale, and the Heat little.

That the Afthma may be a Symptom of an intermitting Fever, is evident by the Defcription of fome cafes of that nature in fome Modern Writers: And I remember an Apothecary who, after drinking largely, was feized with an Intermitting Fever, with an Inflammation of the Lungs, and every Night a fit of the Afthma accompanied a fit of the Fever, which after three Weeks was cured by frequent Bleeding, Vomiting, and at laft Purging; but the Afthma long after continued, returning every Night with large Spitting. He He used too little of the Cortex, and therefore suffer'd these Returns of the Afthma upon any Diforder, for half a Year, when the Fever evidently returning on the Change of the Year, feifed his Head with a Delirium and Convulsions, and so killed him.

In this cafe it appears to me, that the Afthma depended on the Fever whilft that was evident, and afterward whenfoever the Relicks of that Fever were agitated by an Accident into an Effervefcence, they produced only the Afthma Fit, without the ufual Symptoms of the Fever.

I will give another Inftance of a Patient about 50 Years old, who after an ordinary Intermitting Fever, without any Symptoms of the Althma, Relapfed after 14 Days into the fame Fever, which returned every 12 Hours, and held him fhivering and fhaking, with a terrible fit of the Afthma, for about half an Hour, and that paffed off without any confiderable Sweat, or Heat, or Spitting: This Perfon was fubject to a Paralytick thaking, and in the Fever had Itrong Convulfive motions: The Cortex would not ftop any of the fits, but *Riverius* Salt mixture did

### (42)

did put off the fits for fome time, but neither that nor Alexipharmics would cure him.

By this Inftance I observed, that an Intermitting Fever having its Matter transferred to the Nerves, produces the complicate Fevers described by the Antient Writers; in which many Irregular Returns happen, and those great Shakings which denominate the Fever, Horrifica, &c. in which they observed Nervous Symptoms with pale Water.

I was confulted for a Gentleman, who at the latter end of a Tertian, was taken with Swooning Fits at certain Hours every Night: He grew very cold, fhort Breath'd, and then fwooned, unless he used great quantities of Spirits and Cordials: This was certainly the Relicks of his former Ague, and he was cured by Salt of Wormwood, and Elixir Proprietatis, given at convenient times. And the fame fwooning Fits I knew cured in another by the Cortex. In neither cafes the Fever was difcernible, either by Thirft, Heat, or Urine. I have mentioned these cases, to shew that all Fevers are not regular in their Symptoms, and that the Afthma is one of those Irregulars, both

#### (44)

both as to any extreme Heat, Thirft, &c. and also in its Periods, because it returns every tenth Day in the Periodical fit, or else Spring and Fall, as intermitting Fevers; and it has this peculiarity of Anomalous Fevers, that its greatest Symptoms appear in the Nerves, viz. the Inflations, which I shall next describe.

That old diffinction of Natural, Vital, and Animal Spirits, muft be ftill admitted, and approved by all Modern Phyficians, and I will give my Explanation of it, being obliged to admit that there are Animal Spirits which produce the Inflations of the Membranes in the Afthma fit.

If we confider the Generation of Vegetable Spirits, we may more eafily apprehend the Rife and Conftitution of the Animal.

That all Vegetable Spirits are prepared from their Oil and Acid, appears by their Preparation; for if the Vegetables be fermented, a Spirit may be diftilled from them; but if the Vegetables be diftilled after a fhort Digeftion, an Oil is diftilled from the fame. Fermentation diffolves the Tartar of Liquors, and makes it fpirituous, by which it affects the Nofe ftrongly.

By

## (45)

By Fermentation the Air is mixed or united with the most volatil Particles of the Oil and Acid, and that gives the Elafficity and briskness of motion to the Spirits of fermented Liquors; their Inflammability is from their Oil, and their sharp Pungency from the volatile Tartar : This volatile Oil and Tartar, if they fwim in the Air, they are like the refinous Particles of Smells, affecting our Nofes by their Spirituousness; but if contain'd in a Bubble of Water, they may be called the Spirit of that Liquor. Those volatile hot Parts, like fire, rarify the Air included in the Bubbles, and make it more Spirituous and Elaftic; the Oil and Acid being of different natures in different Vegetables, they varioufly denominate and diftinguish these several Spirits, and give different Rarefactions to the included Air in the Bubble constituting those Liquors.

The first production of the Spirits in animal Humours is in the Stomach, when the Meat being diffolved by Fermentation, or Agitation of its aerial Particles, the volatilized oily Parts (which give the Foetor) and the volatile Acid, which fmells sharp or four, mix'd with the aerial elastic Particles, and included in a Bubble of of Water, compose the Spirits of animal Humours; the frothiness of the Contents of the Stomach shews the oily Viscidity of the Chyle, and that was necessary to constitute the Bubbles for containing the Spirits of animal Humours.

(46)

These Bohnius describes in the Chyle, by the help of the Microfcope, Chylus eft fluidum ex globulis diaphanis, per liquorem crystallinum agitatis .---- And pingues chyli particula in bullulas five veficulas ab aeris Atomis reducuntur. If too much Slime abound in the Chyle, the most rarified Parts of the Air, and volatile Parts of Meat, are fully inclosed and retain'd, and create a very windy Liquor; fuch as is that of new Wine, or Beer, undepurated from its Slime, and windinefs, or fpirituous Air. It is in animal Humours as in all other fermented Liquors, the better it is fermented, the more quick and brisk are the Spirits; but if they be not fufficiently fermented, the Spirits are windy and flat; if over fermented, the Spirits are eafily Evaporated, or else turned eager, or acid, or fœtid: So all Aromatics, as Orange or Citron Pills, if fermented too long, they vield a foetid Oil and stink; if less fermented, they yield an Aromatic Oil.

In

In the Chyle the Spirits are like that of new Beer, crude, raw, and not inflammable; but in the Blood they are more depurated by fecretion of flimy Humours, fuch as the Lacteal Lympha, and by long and frequent Circulations, the oily, acid, aerial Spirits become more volatile, and are contain'd in the Bullulæ which make the red particles of Blood : And these Bohnius thus describes; Rubicundam portionem autoplie mobiliorem effe, hinc magis activam ratio suadet .---- Spherule illa agiles gelatinosa ramenta simul in motus perennes abripiunt, & mutua attritione deliquant, rubicundæ vesiculæ per Microscopium apparent per Crystallinam Lympham ferri, que statim cum secum quietem componunt, motore vitali destitute, in grumum nigricantem facessunt. These large red Bullulæ in the Blood contain the rarified Air, and volatile Particles; and becaufe they do not readily mix with Water, they may The have fome Fatnefs or Oil in them. ufe of these is to diffolve and make the mucilaginous Mass of Blood more fluid, which helps its Circulation and Secretion, Digestion and Affimulation of the new Chyle ; and in this confifts the use of the Vital Spirits. If these Globuli contain a very

(47)

### (48)

Pa

N

打开

N

to

18

W

Hy

ma

Wil

vel

Sli

20

Ð

th

Ce

ga

very windy Spirit, that makes it fubject to Effervelcences, and Fevers, and Defluxions; for that forces the Serum that is Cacochymical, too much through the Cephalic, or other Glands, which ought naturally to be perfpired, or go off by Refpiration.

If these windy Globuli fill the Respiratory Nerves, and Muscular Membranes, they produce that stiffness or rigidity obferved in the Breast in the Atthma Fit.

The Spirits we call Animal, are probably a Congeries of the Globuli obferved in the Blood, and are feparated from it by the Glands of the Brain ; and fince the Animal Spirits pre-exifted in the Blood, they muft partake of the fame preternatural Quality and State, as is obferved in the Chyle and Blood, and be very windy, and eafily rarified ; and becaufe of their mucilaginous Vehicle, unfit for a free Circulation through the Nervofum Genus, but apt, upon great Rarefactions, to fland inflated.

There is a continual Flux of the Animal Spirits into the Pneumonic Nerves, for the neceffary use of Respiration, and also into the Cardiac Nerves, to perpetuate the Circulation of the Blood, as also into the Par

# (49)

Par intercostale, to promote the constant Periftaltic motion of the Guts; and thefe Nerves are chiefly affected in the Althina, and none of those which serve for voluntary Motion, and by reason of the continual Flux of Spirits through the mentioned Nerves, they must be more open, and apt to receive the windy Spirits from the Blood, by which the Afthmatic Inflation is made in the Breaft and Prime Via.

The Nerves of the Lungs were alfo weakned by fome precedent Inflammation in the Spitting Afthma, or elfe by Hysterical Dyspnæa's in the Hysteric Afthma; and that determines the motion of the windy Spirits very much that way.

I have defcribed the mucilaginous windy Temper of the Chyle, and Effervescence of the Blood, and windiness in the Animal Spirits, in a mucilaginous Slime, to whofe Rarefaction the Stiffnels and Rigidity and Contraction in the Membranes is to be imputed.

r.n

S,

e

0

re

18

If I had only defcribed the Globuli, and imputed all Effects to mechanic Motion, I could not have taken any Indication thence useful in Practice, therefore tis neceffary to defcribe the Cacochymia's, againit which I must direct my Method 1001

E

and

and Medicines : And I must defire the Mechanic Writers to explain in what part of the Globuli the Oil, the Acid, and the Earth stands, and how Fermentation alters them, and how Medicines work any Alteration in them. The Chymical Principles are more uleful in Pra-Atice than the Mechanic, but above all the old Galenic Cacochymia's : For tho' Nature be too fine for me to difcern its Figures and Motions in Fermentations, yet 'tis eafie for me to observe the Effects of that great Instrument of Natures. whereby the changes Liquors from one Cacochymia to another, and makes the preternatural State fenfibly flimy, windy, acid, serous, or falt, viscid, acrid, bitter or putrid; this I can fee, tafte and understand; these were the true, fensible, antient Galenic Notions useful in Practice. In his Method of curing Inflations, he describes the Alusides modiua in Animal Bodies, which is raifed by the natural Heat, and ought to perspire from our Humours, after a perfect Digestion ; and when the innate Heat (by which is to be understood the Fermentation of Humours) is weak, or the Humours half digested, thick, glutinous, that impure Spirit cannot. BRE

( 50 )

10

At

ti

20

山

the

he

Cit.

Co

N

Va

fet

dig

ou

the

wh

this

agit

pur

IR

曲

雕

20

the

m

# (31)

not perfpire, especially if the Pores be ftopt. He observes farther, that sometimes the Heat being increased, the thick and glutinous Humours are resolved into thick Vapours.

the hat ind

ion ork

in the state

Its

ans,

es,

the

dy,

ter

¢[-

an-

ice,

he

30.

eat,

HS,

be

er-

is

ed,

iot,

Galen describes the HVEGua eusaster, as the Matter of flatulent Tumours, which he calls nazi à drudder, not aidegader, nor memler; and this he explains by a different Constitution of the Air in the South and Northwinds; a tempestuous Air full of Vapors is like the windy Spirits, but a clear fedate Air like the natural Ætherial well digested Spirit. This notion is easie, obvious, and true ; for in fermenting Liquors there rifes a fpirituous Vapour from them, which burfts the Veffels if reftrained, and this is the windy Spirit; but that which agitates the Globuli of perfectly Fermented and Depurated Liquors, that is more pure and lefs Elaftic than those beforementioned.

I will next describe those nervous Parts that are fill'd, inflated, and become tense or ftiff by this immature or ill prepar'd Spirit. Galen observes, That the Πresspace πaxe 2) dτμ. Spiss is contained sometimes under the Skin covering the Bones, sometimes under the Peritonzum, sometimes in the E 2 Belly, (52) Belly, fometimes under the Skins covering the Muscles, and fometimes in the membranous Tendons, and the Muscles are filled with that Spirit; by which we may observe, that he observed it was usual for that Spirit to affect the Membranes; but this it does not only externally by Inflating them, but enters into the hollow Tubes of the nervous Fibrillæ, which conftitute the Nerves and Membranes. The Membranes that are inflated, and

認

at like

Sto

Via

In

St

bra

Wit

ma

pe

tra

thi

51

M

b

CO SOL

10

由

is

1218

thereby contracted in the Afthma; are, First, Those of the Lungs and Cavity of the Breaft. Almost the whole Substance of the Lungs is Membranous, confifting of the Trachea, Bronchea, and Vesiculæ; the exterior Membrane of the Trachea is defcribed to have motritious Fibers, which go along the length of it, to abbreviate the Trachea, and circular Fibers to contract its Cavity. It has alfo an inward Membrane extreamly fenfible of Fume, Duft, or the least Injury, and the Veliculæ of the Lungs conftitute a great fpungy Substance of it, and they are deferibed to have mufcular Fibers, for to contract them in Expiration.

Pulmonibus musculum reticularem collulas eorum singulas ambientem, & comprimentem

# (53)

tem supersterni. — Et tracheæ tunicam succingentem e rectis & circularibus staminibus Musculosis coagmentari, is observed by Anatomists ; and these Muscular Stamina, like the Fibræ Nervosæ, which move the Stomach and Guts, are inflated in the Asthma, as the others be in the Prime Viæ.

The whole Cavity of the Breait, the Intercostal Muscles, the Diaphragme and Sternum, are cover'd with the same Membranes, which are affected more or less with an Inflation in the Fit of the Althma; and on this do the Symptoms, appearing in the Breast, depend.

Vi-

b.

<u>n</u>-

nd

he

US

t,

ar

al-

-03

ry,

Hte

ey

ers,

2/15

RR-

tent

By this Inflation the Bronchia are contracted or straitned, and that produces the Wheezing noife in Expiration, and that this Symptom does not depend on Phlegm is plain, because the Hysteric, who have no Phlegm, Wheeze very much.

The Lungs feel ftiff, ftrait, and admit but little Air, because the Veliculæ are contracted, as well as the Bronchia; and some express their feeling, as if the Lungs rose and were drawn upwards, to choak them. This contraction of the Veliculæ is very probable, because the Bronchia are contracted, and the Veliculæ have the  $E_3$  fame

### ((54))

2

be

eal

Car

enta

pre

ph tha

tru

no

th

the

CAV

bot

Af

'n

ti

alt

Pha Wa

is

Fa

mit

fame Muscular Fibres to help Expiration, by which they may be drawn fo up, as not to admit the Air.

From this Contraction of the Veficulæ and Bronchia of the Lungs, it follows, if the Air cannot be admitted there, the Breaft cannot be dilated duly, to make a true Infpiration. The motion of our Lungs is like a Pair of Bellows, if they be open'd by the force of our Hands, and the cavity will freely admit the Air, we can move them eafily; but if the Noitrils and entrance of the Air be ltopt, or suppose a Bladder tied within the Bellows to the Noftrils, fo to receive the Air, and fuffer none to get into the cavity of the Bellows, but what it contains; it will follow, that in a perfect floppage of all the entrances of Air, the Bellows could not be opened; and it no more entred than may be contain'd in the Bladder (fuppofed above) the Bellows would be opened but a little way, and would infpire difficultly. So it apapears in the business of the Afthrna, the Infpiration is difficult and laborious, because but little Air can be admitted into the contracted Bronchia, and the Veficulædrawnup: This puts the Scapular and Intercoltal Muscles and Diaphragme upon fame

#### a violent endeavour to press in the Air, and open the Lungs, which nifus Authors have mistaken, and fupposed the Pneumonic Muscles, especially the Diaphragme, to be convullively affected; but it may be eafily apprehended, that the Diaphragme cannot prefs the Viscera downwards to enlarge the Breaft, if the Air cannot beadmitted into the Lungs to follow its depreffion, and fill the cavity of the Breaft; for in that cafe the weight of the Atmofphere preffing on the Belly, would more than counterpoifeits force. And this is the true reafon why the Diaphragme cannot move in the Afthma Fit. Not only the Membranes immediately compoling the Lungs are Inflated, and thereby the cavity is contracted in the Afthma, but also fometimes the Membranes of one or both of the Pleura's, and that draws the Afthmatic to lie and lean on that fide during the Fit, and flying Pains are many times observ'd after the Fit. The Mediattinum is affected in others, who complain of straitness, weight, or pains towards the Sternum; and the Pericardium is also affected in those who are subject to Fainting Fits, or Palpitations, or Intermitting Pulses.

E

(55)

E 4

The

#### The Membranes of the Muscles and Diaphragme being tense or stiff, may hinder the motion of the Pneumonic Museles, because the Membranes being supposed to arise from the Tendons, and being continuations of them, they may divert the Spirits from the body of the Muscles, and by their straitness hinder both the flux of Spirits and Blood into the Muscles, by compressing the Arteries and Nerves.

(56)

The flownefs of Infpiration and Expiration in the Fit depends on the ftiffnefs or ftraitnefs in the Lungs, and Parts inflated, which refifts the Action of the pectoral Mufcles; 'tis a long time before the Air can be drawn in, and almost as long before it can be forced out, because of the conftriction of the Bronchia.

The rarenels, or ftop, or interval betwixt Infpiration and Expiration, depends on the ftop given the Pulle by the Afthma Fit, (and that ftop is made either by the Conftriction on the Pericardium, or the Membranes of the Arteries;) for the ftronger and quicker the Pulle is, the more frequent are the Infpirations and Expirations.

TTC.

The

## (57)

The great labour for Infpiration, is, because the Diaphragme cannot move downward, by reafon of the ftop given in the Lungs to the Airs Infpiration; for the Diaphragme fhould deprefs the Belly, and thereby enlarge the cavity of the Breaft for Infpiration : This defect obliges the Afthmatic to labour more with the Muscles of the Shoulders to lift up the Breaft, and for the fame reafon the Afthmatic must fit up, that the weight of the Belly may a little weigh down the Diaphragme, and the Afthmatic finds eafe in leaning forward, or being held up under the Arms to enlarge the cavity of the Breaft for Air; and this fort of Breathing is called Sublimis and Magna, because the Breast is more enlarged upward in this Dyfpnæa more than any other, and yet but little Air is drawn into the Lungs.

Is

1¢

re

as

fe

С-

ds

1.

Dy

01

10

he

nd

1C

Secondly, The Membranes of the Head are muchaffected in the Afthma with an Inflation, which makes the fenfe of numbriefs in fome, in others fulnefs, or ftraitnefs, as if the Membranes were on all fides drawn downwards ; and this ftraitnefs produces a ftop in the Blood Veffels, from whence comes Pain, Dulnefs, Stupidity, and running irregular Phancies ; but this ufually remits remits before the Fit goes off, after the fleep of the first Night of the Afthma; and is much abated by Combing the Head backwards, and keeping it cool, and getting out of Bed in the beginning of the Fit. This stop on the Vessels does in old Afthmatics produce the Dropsie in the Head, of which they always die Lethargic.

(58)

Thirdly, The Membranes of the Stomach and Guts are much affected by Inflations in the Fits: Hence come frequent Eructations, when the Stomach is empty, yet it feels full, diftended, and the Guts are disturbed with continual Wind, which fometimes gripes them, or gives Inflations and Contractions; and fometimes the fmall Fits of the Afthma, which depend on Weather, are only in the Prima via, where the nervous Fibres and Membranes fuffer Inflations: The changes of Weather very much affect the Prime via, by a flux of ferous and flatulent Humours that way, by which the Contents are violently Rarified, and the Membranes irritated into Inflations, and alfo the windy Spirits raife fome diffurbance in the Membranes, and a diftention which hinders the motion of the Diaphragme. The Incubus is very like the Affhma. It

In

# ( 59 )

It takes Perfons there with affected in their fleep; they have a difficulty of Breath, and they have the fame difficulty in moving their Hands and Limbs, which is more than is in the Afthma; the Incubus lafts but a fhorter time, depending on the crude Spirit, filling the Nerves from a full Stomach, which evaporate on waking, or elfe the Stagnation of Chyle in the Heart and Lungs, for I have obferved their Pulfe to Intermit.

In the Palfie, where the Nerves are obstructed above, there is no Inflation of the Parts beneath, but they are rather weak and flaccid, but the Asthma Fit lasts but few hours, or some days; and if in the Asthma the Nerves were obstructed in the Plexus, how can that be so soon removed? or the Lungs appear stiff and inflated below? they would rather be relaxed below the Obstruction.

The Irritation of the Nerves by the Serum extravafated in the Head is only in Cachectic Perfons, and those who are Hydropical, and cannot ordinarily produce the Fits, but is the effect of a long Difease. The Althma oft ends in Tympanicical Inflations of the Belly, and that Differmper by Analogy may explain the preternatural natural State of the Spirits; for windy Inflations affect the Guts alike in both, and that makes the Parts ftiff and rigid; all hot things increase the Inflations, and cool ones allay them in both; fo that the same is the preternatural state of the Spirits in both, they being crude and unripe, because contained in a mucilaginous Lympha; fo that being Rarified on any occasion into large Bubbles or Froth, they produce that Inflation in the membranous Fibres, the which makes them stiff, and the Inflation contracts the cavities they constitute in the Lungs, &c.

(60)

The windy Tumours of the external Parts, which prefently fubfide again, are not unlike the Afthmatic Inflations. In the Belly, those windy Tumours depend on the Tumour of the Viscera, comprefsing the nervous Parts, and are therefore more lasting; but in the Afthma the Spirits are only Rarified, and cause their own Obstruction and Stagnation for a small time, till the windy Spirits are Evaporated, or again compressed and restored to their natural Consistence.

I never could observe any Tumour, Pain or Stiffness, Fullness or Convulsion in any of the Expiratory or Inspiratory Muscles.

## (61)

Muscles. If the Diaphragme was convulsed, that would help the Inspiration, by enlarging the Breast, as in its natural Motions; If the Muscles of the Belly, which help Expiration, were convulsed, that might easily be observed by their prefsing in the Belly; and the fame would be observed in the Triangular Muscle of the Sternum. I must confess I have observed a twitching sometimes, when the Breast is almost perfectly subsided, but that is not constant; so that I cannot think any Convulsion is commonly found in the Asthma Fit, but is sometimes a Symptom, upon Extremities of Labouring and Suffocation.

No other Hypothefis feems to me fairly to explain this lafting Stiffnefs of the Lungs, but an Inflation in its Membranes, which hindring the entrance of Air, gives a Catalepfis, and Rigidity, or immobility to the Diaphragme, the Part most unjustly accused of this Tyrannic Oppression.

I fhall from the Difcourse above about the antecedent Cause of the Asthma, and the parts affected by it, give the following Definition of this Disease.

The Afthma is a high, flow, rare, and laborious Refpiration, which depends immediately on the Inflation of the Membranes branes of the Lungs (which conftringe the Bronchia, Bladders of the Lungs and Blood Veffels) by windy Spirits, rarified or propelled through the Glands of the Brain, either by external Accidents, or a periodic Febrile Effervescence of the Blood.

(62)

The Priapism is reckoned by old Writers amongst the windy Inflations; and it is truly fo; for as the windy Spirits in the fleep inflate the Membranes of the Penis, and by stopping the Circulation of Humours make a Stiffness or Inflation; fo it may be in the Nervous Fibres of the Lungs, there are no true Muscles in either part to make this Inflation, but only nervous Fibres, and in the muscular Membranes, the stiffness of these Parts is not a Convulsion, for that is transient, but a true Inflation, which may endure many days; and therefore Helmont was miftaken when he calied the Afthma Pulmonis Caducum, which feems rather to be of the nature of a Catalepfis, in which all the Parts ftand rigid, ftiff and immoveable.

The Affine A Fire A fire A for A

laborious Reinitation, which depen

DES STAT

### (63) s of treicht or mellimis

# and zavisier CHAP. III.

Since where are allowed and

en ni A oda

Of the evident Causes of the Asthmatic Fit; as, the dir, Diet, Exercise, Passion, &c. and of those Diseases on which the Asthma depends as a Symptom.

Have defcribed the Nature of the true Flatulent Afthma in the preceding Chapters, and in this defign to defcribe the Accidental Fits of the Althma, depending on the Six Non-naturals, and alfo feveral kinds of the Symptomatic Afthma's. ihum monunerys that sucheroff bac

# sie bus en First, The Air.

No Changes or Alterations happen in the Air without caufing fome Alterations in Animal Humours and their Spirits, efpecially those of the Afthmatic, the Air being admitted into the Lungs, and every where compreffing all the external Parts of the Animal, according to its feveral degrees tanss

# (64)

ď

At

fut

m

th

11

Ye

Ch

D

ar

th

17/1

5

W

the

degrees of weight or preffure ; it must affect the Spirits, which are also of an Elaflic Quality, and expand themfelves the more the external preffure of the Air is abated. This Mr. Boyle has fufficiently proved. For Animals are wonderfully inflated or blown up in his Vacuum; the Eyes ftart out, and they Vomit; but upon the readmiffion of Air, they fublide into their former bignefs; and in very high mountainous places, 'tis observed, by reason of a less pressure of the Atmosphere, that Vomiting, Choleras, Hemorrhages, and Dyfpnæa's happen. The Refpiration is most particularly affected by the Alteration of the preffure, becaufe in Infpiration, the Air, by virtue of its Elasticity, expands the Veficulæ of the Lungs, and therefore that expansion mult alter according to the different preffure and elaflicity of the Air. For want of this due Expansion in the Vacuum, the Circulation of the Blood is ftopt in the Lungs, and the Animal dies Convulsive: And that the preffure of the Air being weakned, occafions fhort breathing, is not only evident by those who have been on very high Mountains; But Helmont describes an Afthmatic, of whom he tells us, Montanis

## (65)

tanis locis pejus se habet, ideoque Bruxellis vix pernoctare audet : And it will more fully appear, by comparing the Observations made of Weather by the Barometer, with the Changes in the Spirits of Afthmatic Persons, and their Fits, which succeed on the Changes of Weather.

I will first prove that the Spirits of Animals be very Elastic, and those of Asthmatics much more fo, because very windy.

If the Experiments above mentioned are not fufficient to convince the Reader, let it be confider'd, that the Spirits of Vegetables are very Elaftic, and force their Vessels in very high Fermentations, and in bottled Liquors; that the Changes of the Weather make Vegetable Liquors clear or turbid, and fet them to Ferment again; upon the Changes of the Year, Wines Ferment : And the fame Changes may be observ'd in Animal Humours, upon Changes of the Weather, and the Times of the Year, which shews the Similitude of their aerial Spirits, which keep the fame Expansion and Preffure as the Air it felf has, which is the great Instrument of the Agitation by which Fermentation is managed, and alfo the chief cause of fluidity in Liquors, as well

well as the clearness of their confistence. That the Animal Spirits are Elastic, appears by the Inflation of the Belly, and all the Habit of the Body in those who die Convulsive, their whole Body being exceffively swelled; and in Poison'd Bodies the fame happens when the Poison comes by those Medicines which act much on the Spirits.

(66)

th

CI

pre

an A

in

pin

În

br

On Fi

V

fu

the

the

In

aff

PO. Da

Pro

Ra

In

All Liquors, as Milk and Blood, are raifed into Bubbles in Vacuo Boyliano, upon the Pumping of the Air, which is occafion'd by the Rarefaction of the included Air and Spirits; and that Air is included in Animal Humours, is evident by the application of Cupping-Glaffes, by which the preffure of the external Air being removed, the Internal Spirits and Air become rarefied by its Heat, and fwell the folid Parts in which they are contained.

I will next confider how the Spirits of the Afthmatics are affected in the different States of Air, and fhew that those Effects are produc'd in Animal Bodies, by the fame caufe as the Alterations are in a Weather-Glafs.

& the Spirits of the Afthmatic are most lively, and they breath free, there being then no Vapors

# ( 67. )

ce.

apand

ho

ng Bo-

ton

are

up-

ocded

led

the

ich

re-

be-

the

; of

fte-

hofe

,时

n a

the

hey

ID

in it, or Fumes to weaken the preffure of the Air; for in Serene Weather the Mercury ftands higher than in other ftates, becaufe a larger Cylinder of Air unmix'd, preffes up the Mercury in the Barometer, and by this heavy preffure of the clear Air, the Spirits of the Afthmatic are kept from that Expansion, which ordinarily produces the Fit. 'Tis observ'd that the Intervals of the Fits are largest in dry setled Weather.

When any Mift arifes, the Afthmatic breaths difficultly, and finds an Oppreffion on his Spirits, efpecially a Straitnefs and Fulnefs at the Stomach, upon Changes of Weather, though the Fit does not always fucceed that complaint. The Moifture of the Air is most prejudicial to the Afthmatic, whilft the watery Vapours retain the nature of Exhalations, because then they act most on the Spirits, and cause the Inflation at the Stomach.

The Rain when it falls, does not much affect the Affhmatic, but the watery Vapours which precede it one, two, or three Days, becaule the Vapours weaken the preffures of the Air, as appears by the Barometer, which finks fometimes before Rains, and great Storms, and the Affhma  $F_2$  Fits

# ( 68 )

STH

92 Air Sol Air

art

Fit

Val Po and der fer w th no for

litt

W

by

th

pa

Fits happen two or three Days usually before fuch Changes ; but I have observ'd the Animal Spirits to be more nice, and predict the Alteration before the Weather-Glafs. It is obferv'd by Seamen, that if there be any bad Weather in a Month, it ufually happens two or three Days before, or after the Full or Changes of the Moon, which is the reason why the Afthmatic Fits happen at those times. The preffure of the Air being weakned by the Vapours, the windy Afthmatic Spirits expand themfelves, and inflate the Pneumonic Nerves and Membranes, and occasion the Asthmatic Fits before great Rains.

All damp Houfes and fenny Countries, and thofe Winds that bring fenny Vapours and Mifts, by altering the preflure of the Air, very much affect the Spirits of the Afthmatics ; and fuch the Eaft Wind often brings, which at its firft coming ufually give, the Afthma Fits, upon very great Winds and Storms, though no Rain follows, the Mercury finks loweft of all ; for thefe drive away a great quantity of the ufual Cylinder of Air, by which the preflure of the Air is alter'd ; and before great Storms I have frequently obferv'd great

### (69)

great Affhma Fits. It was one of Van Helmont's Obfervations, Al:as obfervavi, qua spirante Boreâ statim vel in Hypocaustis Asthmate plecterentur insontes. The South Wind is also offensive by the moist Air it brings, but the West and North are least prejudicial here in England.

d

Id

2ª 11,

12

ee

es

ıy

es. ed

the

eat

ies,

UTS

the

the

ind

ing ery ain

all; of

the

fore

v'd

·éat

From other Caufes I have obferv'd the Fits of the Afthma to happen, in all the various Points of the Winds, fo that the Changes of the Air and Winds only difpofe or incline the Afthmatic to their Fits, and oft occafion them; but fuch accidental Fits are fhort, and I generally obferve them to trouble the Stomach moft, where a Windinefs inflates it, and hinders the depreffion of the Diaphragme, but no great alteration happens in the Lungs; for the Fit goes off with Wind, and a little Spit, and loofe Stools.

In Summer the Afthmatic Fits are moft frequent, and grievous; the Afthmatic are most impatient with Heat, especially that of the Fire, before which they do not willingly fit, but most of them, taught by long Experience, chuse to fit on the fide of it. The heat of the Fire rarefies the Air, or over-heats it, fo that it expands the Animal Spirits in the Lungs,  $F_3$  and and difposes them to their Afthmatic Inflations. So we observe in Dogs, a great Dyspnea occasion'd by lying too hot near the Fire.

SI

(70)

Van Helmont observes, Æstate saltem sepius & sevius infestat accessus, quam hyeme, which is generally true, though I have difcourfed fome who complain most of the Winter. These Winter Afthmatics have a Catarrh join'd with their Afthma. I had once a Patient who was a fat Woman, who complain'd of her Winter Afthma; fhe Spit very much, and complain'd of frothy Urine, and Stools like Barm, who by a Diarrhæa was run very Confumptive, and during the continuance of that, she had none of the Asthma. That Vegetable Spirits are expanded by Heat, appears by the Thermometer, and the Animal are alike expanded by the Heat of the Sun, Fire, Clothes, and the Bed, or a Crowd, or close Room, becaufe of the hot Air in them are very offenfive. All Heat weakens the preffure of the Air, as it appears in Cupping-Glaffes, and that being weak, it cannot eafily expand the Bladders of the Lungs; therefore Afthmatics feek a moderate cool and free Air, which makes a more vigorous preffure on their

# (71)

their Lungs, and cools their expanded Spirits, which thereby does refresh them; they love the Windows open, and to be carried into the open Air in a Chalash, to avoid all hot Places, and Weather, which Suffocate them.

The Fit of the Afthma is generally increafed by the Heat of the Bed, and it ufually feizes them there, and they are obliged to rife out of it, and they can bear a great degree of Cold, in fitting up all Night with the Windows open on them, because of the great Expansion of Animal Spirits by the Fit.

I have often had great Fits when the Weather has continued very clear, and only very hot Weather has fucceeded, to which I then imputed the Fits.

In very cold Weather the Fits of the Afthma are less violent, because that comprefles the Expansion of the Spirits; but before any great Snows, the Afthmatic ufually have a Fit, and that a fevere one; or, or least, when the Fit does not fucceed, they feel a Fulness at Stomach.

ic

10

The Quickfilver falls in the Glaffes for want of preffure in that state of Air, and occasions or gives way to the Expansion of the Spirits; and before fuch Storms of Snow,

F 4

# (72)

Snow, the Spirits feel very uneafy and reftlefs, and fome Rheumatic Pains affect the Temples, or top of the Head, with a lightnefs in the Head, and other Pains are obferv'd in the Limbs: Hence it appears that frozen Vapours have the fame effect on the Barometer, and the Spirits, as the floating moift Vapours have, and the reafon of both is a lefs preffure in the Air at fuch times.

In calm frofty Weather the Mercury ftands high, the cold Air being condens'd weighs most; and in fuch Weather the Afthmatic is most free from Fits, for by compression of the Spirits the Afthma is hindred.

The Mercury flands higheft in the cold Eafterly and Northerly Winds, becaufe the cold condenfed Air is drove hither by thofe Winds ; and fince that Air is heavieft, we must impute the Fits occasion'd by them to a fudden check of Peripiration, which produces the Effervescence, on which the Afthmatic Inflation depends, and not only to the want of pressure in the Air.

2

55

01

kin

Ye

ne

W

T

m

for

Re

In extreme cold Weather the Circulation is more ftop'd in the External Parts by the compression of Air, and therefore then

# (73)

then the ferous Humours are carried inwardly towards the Belly, Lungs or Brain, where they pass those Glands, after the manner of a Defluxion.

Any kind of Smoak offends the Spirits of the Afthmatic, and for that reafon many of them cannot bear the Air of London, whofe Smoak, like Fire it felf, irritates their Spirits into an Expansion. I always observ'd the Smoak of Wood more Suffocating than that of Coal, and more apt to occasion a Cough.

The fetid finell of a Candle put out, or the finell of melted Greafe, will often occafion a Fit: And I remember an Afthmatic Lady had a fevere Fit by the finell of an Ointment fhe boiled. *Horftins* has a Remarkable Story of a Woman who grew Afthmatic, by holding her Head over the finell of a Lixivium, for the making of Soap, of which fhe died after 7 Years; and in her Wind-pipe opened, black Glands were obferv'd, of the bignefs of Peas or Beans, to which the Fit was imputed.

A Lady inform'd me that fhe fmoak'd Tobacco for an Hyfterical Pain in her Stomach, by which fhe fell into the Afthma, for which Aftrop-Waters gave her fome Relief. During

#### During the Fit of the Afthma, the fmoak of Tobacco is fo offenfive, that it very much ftraitens the Breath, if it be fmoak'd the firft Day of the Fit, and much endangers a Suffocation. There are many Afthmatics that cannot bear the fmell of it, therefore its Fœtor is injurious at any time, its Heat thickens the Phlegm, and rarefies their aerial Spirits, making them reftlefs; all the good it can do, is, to difcufs the Windinefs after the Fit abates, and to help the Coughing up the Phlegm; but it generally over heats the Air in the Humours of Animals, and raifes the Fermentation too much.

(74.)

There is a Remarkable Inftance in Bonetus, of an Afthmatic who fell into a violent Fit, by going into a Wine-Cellar, where the Muft was fermenting; and this fhews how much the Spirits may be difturbed by Fumes, which are capable of Rarefying them, or elfe caufing a Fermentation in the Humours, which will certainly caufe their Expansion to produce an Afthma Fit.

The Fumes of Metals dry the Lungs, and efpecially those of Quickfilver, which may corrode the Trachea, or at least irritate the Spirits there, and determine their motion re Fl

# (75)

motion much towards the Lungs, where the Fumes are received. Fumus Mercarii (qui ut larvatus femper est tamen Mercurius) statim laringem pracludit, & constringit : Helmont gives us this Observation; from whence we may observe the Stipticity of Mercury, and that Stipicity was observ'd by Avicenna in Mercury, which Taste is always injurious to the Asthma : Those Fumes which Irritate, may vitiate the Trachea, and produce the Humid Asthma, as Helmont describes the Asthma from such Fumes.

The Duft of other Metals fills the Lungs and irritates them, and the Fumes dry the Lungs like Flefh dried with Smoak, and this Afthma is to be cured by moiftening them with Oil, and Milk-Diet, Mucilaginous Pectorals, and open Air.

Mineral Poifons are best corrected by Mineral Medicines; Mercur. Dulcis with Lenitive Purges, Antimonium Diaphoreticum with Theriaca to Sweat, Sulphur Flowers unite with Mercury.

There are fome Infrances of Shortnefs of Breath occafion'd by Thunder, and helped by Sulphur Medicines, and Vomiting; to which those who are Thunderftruck,

# (76)

struck, and recover, are inclin'd, as I have been told.

Not only fœtid offensive Smells occafion the Asthma Fits, but those also that are strong scented and sweet, and most Asthmatics are affected by Perfum'd Waters and Medicines, as the Chymical Oils offend by their strong Odors. There is a Relation of a Monk, in Helmont, who when he eat Fish fry'd with Oil, Ruit extemplo anhelitu privatus, scut vix presocato distinguatur; and this Observation Helmont farther confirms, Vidi frequentes, qua suave olentium odore prater cephalalgias, & syncopes, confestim in extremam respirandi difficultatem inciderent.

Since I have given these Instances of the great Influence of Smells upon Animal Spirits, I will beg pardon to digrefs a little, to confider the nature of Smells, that by comparing what I shall fay of them with my former Discourse of Animal Spirits, I may give a general account of these great Effects produced by Smells.

I will describe the Matter of Smells, then their Differences and Manner how they variously affect the Animal Spirits.

Theophrastus has observ'd that every thing that is unmix'd is without smell, as well

# (77)

well as tafte, therefore all Simple Bodies are without finell, as Water, Air, and Fire are without finell; but that the Earth alone has a finell, because most mixt.

Taftes and Odors are therefore chiefly to be obferv'd in Juices of Plants or Animals, or Metals, and it is is a particular Texture in those Juices, which arises from the mixture of the Principles of things, (viz. the Oil, Acid, Earth, and Water) which strikes the Organ of Taste, with a particular taste, and the same specific texture and mixture was necessary to produce a particular smell, which every Plant and Animal has peculiar to it felf; for what gives the taste in the form of a Liquor, if it be Rarissed and ascends into the Air in Vapour, it strikes the Organ of Smelling with a particular Odor.

Since there is no Odor without Tafte, nor Tafte without fome Odor, and the Odor in Wines and Fruits are changed with their Taftes; the matter of both Taftes and Smells appears to be the fame which gives fuch a vicinity and fociable accord to both those Senses, that Plants are faid to tafte as they finell, and i contra; and we use the names of Smells, as Foctid and Aromatic, to express our Tattes; and, I think, we ought alfo to use the Names of Taste, to express the great variety of our Smells, as I shall do hereafter.

(78)

Odors are not fufficiently diffinguish'd into their Species, which want Names, and they must be borrow'd from the tastes of Plants.

Odors are commonly diffinguish'd into pleafant or grateful "voor Ma, and ungrateful or ill fmells xixoopa; but fince all Animals have a great variety in their Food, and that was defign'd to be grateful to them both in Tafte and Smell, the different Temperament of each Animals Humours and Spirits must make one Food grateful to fome, which will prove very ungrateful to others: So it may be observ'd of Birds of Prey, as Kites, Crows, delight in putrid Flesh, which is to Mankind very ungrateful and unnatural; therefore the gratefulness or disagreeableness of a Tafte or Smell confilts in its fuitable Nature to the Spirits of each particular Animal.

Every Animal has his peculiar Odor, according to the particular Temperament of the Humours, which is pleafant and fincere in the Vigour of its Age, and in perfect

#### (79)

perfect Health; it is fweet in Youth, but itrong, virofe, at the Seafons for Coition, or when the Humours are changed by Age or Difeafes, they fmell ill, ftrong, rank, as in Rabbets, Goats, Deer.

The Matter and vaporous Nature of Smells in Plants and Animals, does most immediately represent the Nature of the Spirits of Animals, and their various States.

13t. Odors are very volatile, lighter than the Air in which they fwim, and fuch are the nature of Animal Spirits volatile, invifible, as Odors, and the effects of a thorough Digeftion; for Plantshave not their true Odor till they be full ripe, and in Flower; Wine fmells more odoriferous than their unripe Muft, and Plants in their native Soil are better ripened, and therefore more odoriferous than in the Garden Soil, where there is too much crude Juice: And in a Morning, after a perfect Digeftion of Animal Humours, we are fentible that our Spirits are moft pure, active, and lively.

2dly. The Matter of Smells in Plants, is chiefly an Oil, or Turpentine, or Rofin; in Animals a greafy or fat Subftance; Wine and Oil does most easily imbibe and diffolve

#### (80)

diffolve Odors, becaufe of the fimilitude of oily Substance; and in Oil of Ben and Almonds we ufually preferve Aromatics. In Animals the most odorous Juices are Oily, as Musk and Castor; nothing smells stronger than the Axungia's, and all these readily mix with Oil, by reason of their oily nature.

Amongft Minerals the Bitumens, which are of a ftrong finell, have an evident Oilinefs, as Ambergreafe, and Petroleum, and Sulphur is ready mix'd with Balfams. 3dly. All Aromatics give a brisknefs to the Spirits, and pleafe them if finelt to, and fupply a larger quantity, if deficient, and are therefore accounted Cordials; foctid Smells are accounted Hyfteric Medicines, and inlarge the Expansion of Spirits; and fince Smells act fo immediately on the Spirits, there must be a great fimilitude betwixt their oily Substances.

But these effects of Smells on the Spirits, must be more particularly confidered, and for that end I will divide Smells into their several Species, and give the Names of Tastes to several of them, whose Effects being well known, it will be more easie to assign the true Effects of their Smells on Animal Spirits.

27 4313 M

I will

tr

h

# (81)

I will give Avicenna's Opinion of Taftes, and their Virtues, Non est possibile ut sapores dulcis, & amarus, & acutus, & salsus sint nist in substantia calida; neque ponticus, Stypticus, & acetosus, nist in substantia frigida; & similiter odores acuti non sint nist in substantia calida; odores quandoq; signisticant sapores, sicut odor dulcis, & acetosus, & acris & amarus; sapores sunt octo dulcedo, amaritudo, & acuitas, & salsedo, acetositas, ponticitas, Stypticitas, unctuositas.

e

S

e

I

h

lt

n,

IS,

0

5 .;

6.

1.

.

ar-

fe

eir

I will reckon all the following Smells amongst the hot Smells, which affect the Head, and expand the Spirits, and give them a quicker Motion.

1st. Acrid Smells, which are pungent; and Authors call this 3equilia, but thefe may be very much diftinguilh'd, according to the Degree of Acrimony; for a crefs Acrid is milder, fuch as Mustard; then a corrofive Acrid, fuch as Garlick, or Squills; and Acrids may be diftinguilhed by the Aromatic, or Bitternels, or Fœtor joined with them.

These kind of Smells are most specific to those indispositions of Spirits, which happen to arise from that state of Humors which requires a hot acrid Taste to correct them; in Hypochondriac cases we

excite

#### (82):

excite the Animal Spirits by volatile Salts, and we give the fame inwardly : In Hysteric cases, we discuss the flatulent Vapours by foetid and acrid Gums, both outwardly and inwardly, fo that it may be a Rule, where any Tafte is neceffary and useful inwardly, we ought to apply the fame, if Odorous, outwardly, to rectify any Diforders of Spirits, that may happen in that cafe; and why may we not infer, that fince any Medicine externally applied to the Smell, very much gratifies it, the fame may be given inwardly to alter the Cacochymia, from whence the diforder'd Spirits are produced? This feems a piece of natural Reasoning, whereby Brutes discover their Medicines when they are Sick, and they eat what pleafes their Smell; and if any Medicine or Meat pleases both Tafte and Smell, we readily use it. If the piercing and volatile Nature of acrid Smells be confider'd, we shall never apply them to Hysterics, where the Spirits are over-volatile and fiery, which feem only proper for the stupid, dull, contracted State of Animal Spirits.

2dly. All Aromatic Smells, as well as Taftes, are hot, and they have either a great Acrimony, or a Bitterness join'd with

#### (83)

with them; fresh Orris is bitter, and exulcerates the Skin, Myrrh, Coftus, Cinnamon, Caffia, Juncus Odoratus, Cyperus, are described by Theophrastus to be hot, acrid and ftyptic, for which Taftes they are used as Medicines.

e

d

31

y

n

1711

10

e 1

e

es

re

11

es

14

ts

m

as

2

d

The milder Aromatics have a fweetnefs, as Fennil, Anifeed ; but all ftrong Aromatics a bitter Tafte : Thefe Smells are on the account of their Acrimony and Bitterness very hot; these Aromatic Smells we apply to fainting Perfons, and the fame are very ufeful inwardly in a languid state of Blood and Spirits. These volatile oily Salts or Balfams are eafily infus'd in Vinous Spirits, and if they be put into Wine as the Antients used, (viz. they commended Wines impregnate with Myrrh, Cedar, Rofin, Gr. ) they affect the Head much, and raife the Circulation of Blood, and Expansion of Spirits, and by fimilitude of oily Parts affimulate themfelves with the Animal Spirits.

These Aromatic Smells will not agree with the choleric, hot, fiery Spirits, becaufe the Aromatic inwardly in that state of Humours are too hot, burning and inflaming the Humours and Spirits. 'Tis this exceffive Heat of odoriferous Medi-1 TANK

G 2

cines

# ( 84 )

cines which gives a vertiginous Motion to the Spirits of hot Conftitutions, and too much expands the windy Spirits, and thereby produces a Dyfpnæa.

3 dly. Foetid Smells, which the old Writers call Bapens ispin, Gravis Odor, this is offenfive to the Spirits, as Aromatics are grateful; if they be Narcotic, they ftupify the Spirits, and allay Pains, Watchings, ftop Bleedings at Nofe, and too great a volatility of Spirits, and their great expansion in Convultions : And these Fœtids, though very acrid in Tafte, and very bitter, yet becaufe of a peculiar texture caufea coolnefs of Spirits, and therefore may be reckon'd amongst the cooling, Smells; but all other Foetids, as Affafoetida, Caftor, volatile Salts, Amber, Sulphur, and the fume of the Fat of a Sea-Calf, Horns and Hoofs are of very hot Parts, very volatil, they expand the Spirits more than Aromatics, but because they prevent their tumultuous Expansions by changing their motions or texture, they are ufeful to some Hysteric Women, but extremely offensive to others, who cannot kear the least of those foetid Smells. And Fliny relates that the Antients did by burning Bitumen, try whether their Slaves were 3000

### ((858))

were Epileptic or not; Accenso lapide gagate explorabant Epilepsiam in servis venalibus; by which one might conclude, that Bitumen, and other Foetids, are injurious to Convulfive cafes, especially when they come near to be Epileptic; in which cafes I should doubt of Castor, Assarchida, Powders of the Skull, Vipers, Toads, Worms, the Stones of Horfes, or Secundine, all these being strong Foetids, rarefy tumultuous fiery Spirits into violent Fits, and drive more morbific Matter into the Nerves of fuch Perfons, which are too open to receive extraneous Matter.

All poifonous Plants, whether Narcotic or Corrofive, are very Fœtid ; fuch as Napellus, their Fætor offends the Spirits, and their Burning or naufeous Tafte, the Palat, that thereby Animals might be naturally taught to avoid them.

All putrid things are very Unwholeiom in our Diet; and Theophrastus well observes, "A Tar on Tomevor Nanades, the Foctor gives us an averfion to it, therefore I thould always avoid giving Mummy, or other putrid Parts of Animals, as Skulls, Renner; to these who have a violent Averfion, especially if we finell their putrid or virofe Odor. Fætid

d

1.

ő

The Crude

# (86)

Fœtid Smells outwardly, and Fœtid Medicines inwardly, are uleful always in the fame cafe, viz. Lethargic and great Dulnessof Spirits; the Antients gave Caftor from 9i. to 3 s. and 3i. for a Dole; for 5 days, they u'sd the fame quantity in Clyfters, they mixt it in Sternutories, or ufed its Fumes, and they anointed it outwardly, and in very hot Bodies they contrived to temper its heat, by giving it in Oxymels, or Vinegar, and not in Brandy Spirits, as we improperly do. 'T is plain to me, that Fætidsdomore good after their Acrimony is abated by Vinegar, than in a finer Solution: We therefore act very odly, when we ftudy more for a Menftruum, which fhall curioufly diffolve a Gum, but neglect an experienc'd Vehicle, which makes it better to agree with our Conftitutions. Vinegar does not diffolve Gums well, but coagulates them; but nothing corrects their corrofive Acrimony like it : Water is their most natural Menstruum, which turns them into their original Milk, and Brandy Spirits only diffolve the refinous Part, and not the whole Gum.

The cool Smells are those which abate the Heat, Motion, and Expansion of our Animal Spirits.

1st. Crude

## (87)

13t. Crude Smells, fuch is that of fresh Plants which are set in Rooms to correct the heat of the Air, as Vines, Nymphea Leaves, Willows, and all Plants of a crude Juice, Meadow sweet, and fenny Plants. The smell of a green Turf is used to be held to the Noses of them that are struck with a Damp, to recollect and cool their Spirits, which are too much rarefied by the Sulphur Fumes.

2*dly*. Acid finells, fuch as is that of Vinegar: The Seamen use Vinegar much to correct the putrid Air of their Ships, by washing the Wood and Beams of their Cabins with it. This is therefore very agreeable to the Sick in many cases.

The fmell of Vinegar removes the naufeoufnefs, and prevents Vomiting, and cools.

t'S

15.

It

ts

eľ

ch

d

IS

Omnes odores ex quibus sentitur mordicatio sunt calidi, & bene redolentia, quapropter dolorem capitis pariunt, & illi ex quibus sentitur acetositas, omnes sunt frigidi. Avicenna.

The fmell of the Fumes of Vinegar is proper for many Hyfterical Women, who cut Rue and Nutmeg, then fprinkle it with Vinegar, fo they tie it in a Nodulus to fmell to : This will moft  $G_4$  effectu-

#### (88)

effectually compress the expanded Spirits, for Acids make the Blood black, which the curious Microscope impute to the Globuli crouded together, as they do the Floridness to the Division and Separation of the Globuli.

Vinegar will cool the Elaftic Particles, and abate their Expansion, for that corrects all volatile Salts, thickens Oils, coagulates milky Juices, cools Inflammations, ftops Evacuations and Fermentations, and has all properties contrary to the action of Fire, and all hot Animal Principles, for they rarefy and expand the Spirits and Humours, and make them more agile, elastic, fermenting.

Vinegar agrees with Fevers and all Inflammations, and Effervescences of Humours; therefore the smell of Vinegar is very fuitable to all Nervous Effects depending on such Diseases, such is the Hyfteric Fits and Inflations of Spirits I have described, and in all furious Dispositions of Spirits, where their motions are tumultuous, in Deliriums, Phrenetics.

3dly. The Narcotic Smells, fuch as Primrofe, Poppies, give a Heavinefs to the Spirits, and dispose them to a less Expansion; therefore we may add these to

65 4

a

-UTSaile

a Nodulus with Vinegar to compose the Spirits.

Sweet Smells, fuch as the Writers call your is, feem to be Cordials refreshing the Spirits, but neither so ftrong as to difcompose them, but so warm as to continue the motion or expansion.

A ftrong  $(i_{\chi v \in \mathscr{F}})$  Smell is when there is very much of a Smell in any thing which makes a violent imprefion on the Spirits. The heat of Fire, or of the Sun, or grinding, caufes the Vapour in which the fmell is, to rife plentifully into the Air, and act briskly on the Spirits: Strong Infpiration through the Nofe, and fnuffing up any Liquors, gives a more evident Imprefion on the Senfe.

A mild Smell, Mollis, or Maxani, is a weaker Impression by a more languid Halitus, Quicquid tenue & molle in odoratu, infirmum est.

The Senfibleness of the Trachea is very evident, because all Afthmatics are offended by the least Dust made by sweeping of a Room, or making of a Bed. I knew one who was a Malster, who told me he could not bear the Dust of Corn whilst it was removed. And Helmont gives a remarkable Instance of a Monk em-

# (90)

by

of

op

all

Al

10

An

Cat

I

the

the

par

to

L

ma

enc

fan

VAL

are

A

Ta

of

D

Wh

W

ret

acr

employ'd in pulling down Buildings, who grew Afthmatic; and he fays of him, Quoties deinceps locus aliquis vertitur, vel alias ventus pulverem excitat, mox concidit fere præfocatus, pene præcluso anhelitu jacet moribundus. In this case the Dust irritates the Skin of the Trachea, and thereby occasions a tumultuous motion of Spirits, which of themselves are always disposed in Asthmatics to expand too much, and cause the Constriction in the muscular Fibers of the Bladders of the Lungs, and those of the Bronchia.

#### Secondly, Of Diet, or Meats and Drinks agreeable or injurious to the Asthma.

I fhall next treat of fuch Meat and Drink which Experience flews us is agreeable to Afflumatics, and what is most difagreeable to them, by occasioning their Fits.

Allstrong Liquors are very injurious to the Asthmatic, and this is confirm'd by their constant Experience of shortness of Breathing upon any Debauch by them.

Strong Wines inflame the Spirits, and all ftrong Malt Liquors increase the Fits of the Aithma, and shorten the Intervals by

# (91)

by expanding and rarefying the Spirits, by raifing a violent Fermentation in the Stomach, as also by breeding great quantity of vifcid Phlegm, whereby the Lungs are oppreffed and ftop'd : But Brandy above all Liquors is most pernicious to the Afthma, it rarefies the windy Spirits most of all, and certainly gives a violent Fit. And fince Spirits are fo evidently Suffocating to Afthmatics (for Punch will immediately give me a Dyspnæa) we may thence infer, That the Animal Spirits in the Afthma are too much rarefied or expanded, and that whatfoever is contrary to Brandy Spirits, as Watery and Acid Liquors, they will beft agree with Afthmatics : And fince this is by my Experience found to be true, I may infer the fame thing, à Nocentibus as well as Juvantibus, that the Spirits and Humours are too much rarefied in the Fits of an Afthma; this feems to me the true natural way of difcovering the unknown ftate of Humours in occult Difeafes, for that . Diet is most agreeable in every Difease which is contrary to the state of Humours which produce it, a cooling Diet to rarefied hot Humours, and a hot aromatic acrid Diet to a crude mucilaginous ferous AFTE State.

#### (92)

21

t

D

Va

m

to

110

State. If then I confider the Nature of any Diet, that fick Perfons by Experience find most agreeable, I may by that be instructed, that the Nature of the Difease is contrary to it; and if I know what are the Taftes and Temper of a Diet which agrees with the Difease, I may chuse the fame Temper , and Taftes fomewhat stronger, but of the fame kind in my Medicines, and those will prove most Specific to the Difease, and that particular Conftitution which has experienced the Diet. As for Example; I have observ'd Sack, Sherry, Frontiniac, and all other rich Wines to be the occasion of Asthma Fits, by raifing a Fermentation in the Stomach, and an Ebullition in the Blood, which ends in an Inflation of the Pneumonic Membranes and Fibres; but on the contrary I observe, that Mead, or Mulfum unfermented, Wine and Water are the most agreeable Liquors, because they are not apt to ferment and raife Wind in the Stomach, and therefore do not agitate or rarefy the Humours and Spirits, neither do they thicken the Lympha Lactea, and occasion much Phlegm. By this certain Experience, and my Rationale on it, I learn to avoid all hot Diet, and

### (93)

f

œ

De

fe

re

18

at

IY 此

ar

he 'd

T

32

0-

d,

ŀ

OF

er

ife

do

d

n-

m,

h

北町山

Cont in

and confequently all hot Medicines in the Afthma, and I am-taught, to use all the cooling methods, which create no Wind, nor Phlegm, nor rarefie the Spirits, and it is of no small moment in the Afthma, and many other cases not to offend in our Liquors, as to the fort of it, or its quantity; for our Healths, in Chronical cases, much depends on our Liquors, which by raising accidental Ebullitions occasion our Fits.

All fermenting Wines, or new Drinks have an intertine Agitation of aerial Spirits, which they communicate to the Spirits of Animals, fuch an effect in a high degree all bottled Liquors have, which, by reafon of its Windinefs is very difaagreeable to the Afthma. By this Obfervation 'tis plain, that all windy Liquors and Medicines are to be avoided by Afthmatics; therefore, if poffible, they must abitain from fermented Liquors, which are more or lefs Windy, and they ought to live on Decoctions of Woods, or fome other watery Decoctions of Herbs.

I know an Afthmatic, who upon any tendency towards a Fit, drinks plentifully of Milk and Water, which prefently allays the Inflation of his Stomach.

Water

# (94)

D

100

oft

and

are

but

Ik

relie

quo

of

arg

ACT

10

net

Spi

mat

ferv

faid

Phi

ing

mo

Bea

61.2

abou

YOU

Ext

No

Water with a burnt Toast is a good Liquor for young Stomachs, but the aged, whose Spirits are less hot, cannot bear fuch poor Liquors; and frequent Fits oft make the Spirits languid, and then they require a moderate Spirituous Liquor, fuch is a small Ale of Six-strike in the Hogshead, which is the strongest Asthmatics ought to drink, with green Broom or Gill dried, putting these of either to be hung in a Bag in fix Gallons of this small Ale, for ordinary drink at Dinner.

All drinking betwixt Meals is injurious, efpecially all morning or evening draughts of Wine or Malt Liquors, for that raifes unnatural Windiness in the Stomach: My general Cuftom is to drink Toast and Water every morning half a pint, to drink about a quart of Broom finall Beer at Dinner, and at night to take a Toaft and Mead, or Hydromel for my Supper, or elfe Bread eat with a Glafs or two of Wine and Water: And then in the Winter this. of Mum agrees well; all hot Liquors, as Coffees, Theas; of Cephalic Herbs, as Sage, Ge. or Stomachic, as Buckbean, which is a Centaury I have tried, but find none fo good as Toast and Water. And the second of the second of the second

No Diftemper requires more orderly Diet than the Afthma, but especially a moderation in Drinking, that the Serum of the Blood may not abound too much, and a constant use of those Liquors that are moderate, neither too hot nor cool, but fuited to the Constitutions and Age. I know a fat Asthmatic who was much relieved by drinking very little of any Liquor.

From these Observations of the Nature of hot Diet, and its disagreement, I may argue, that all hot Tastes, as Aromatics, Acrids, Gums, Fetids, or Balsams, or Oils, or Resins, or Salts, by raising a Windiness and Rarefaction of Humours and Spirits, are likewise injurious to the Afthmatic.

As to the Food of Afthmatics, I obferve that all that which produces a vifeid Chyle, thickens the Humours, creates Phlegm and Wind, and ftops the Breathing, fuch is that of Pudding, Cruft, and moft Meal-meats, of Rice, Wheat, Peas, Beans; and Milk-meats, as Cream, Cheefe, &c. and amongft Fleih-meats, those which abound with a Mucilage, as Fish, Eggs, young Creatures, young Pigs, and the Extremity of Animals, and Jelly-Broths, Ovfters: Oyfters; all which breed a thick Chyle, which ftops in the Lungs in the Spitting Afthma, and that oppreffes them.

(96)

the

01

de

Wa

me

Dis

par

to

the

and

eat

ty

What

tun

an

01

litt

Day

TUT

10

bit

ly

mer

into fud

Fills

From this Experience I may infer, that no mucilaginous Gums or Medicines, Syrup or Pectorals of that nature, can be convenient for the Afthmatic, but rather Medicines which attenuate without heat, and proper to diffolve a thick mucilaginous Chyle, without exciting an Effervescence, such as the following Vinegar.

Galen makes Pythagoras the Author of Vinegar of Squills, which he began to use about the 50th Year of his Age, and lived Galen's Prefcript is the fame as to 117. in the Dispensatory, which he highly commends against all Flatuosities : It makes the Senfes quick, the Colour good, and the Respiration easie ; it helps Digettion, it loosens the Belly, it provokes Urine, difcuffes Wind, and abates the Fulnels of He observ'd the Pthisical cured Fleih. by this when desperate; it cures the Epilepfy, and prevents it; it helps the Gout, and Rheumatic Pains, and Hardness of Liver, and Spleen.

The Wine of Squills is commended by Galen for the fame Difeafes: Galen uses the to one of Squills, but the the Dispensatory but viii. and he mentions Honey two or three parts to be added to make it more acceptable; his Dofe was 3 i. (which is too much) before meat, and half an Ounce after it. This Digeftive the Antients conftantly used as part of their Diet, and Emperors used it to prolong their Lives.

The lefs the Afthmatic are nourished, the longer are the Intervals of the Fits, and the clearer is their Breaths; for if we eat moderately, we fubstract the quantity of our Chyle, and we better Digest what we take; but any Excels raifes a tumultuous Fermentation in the Stomach and Blood, which produces a Rarefaction in the Spirits. So true is Hippocrates Observation, If a man eats and drinks little, he shall have no Difease.

Though we eat moderately, yet in 10 Days, or 14 at most, the Asthma Fit returns from a Fulness of flatulent Chyle, or nutritious Juices, which, like the morbific matter of an Ague, will not throughly affimulate with the Blood, but Ferments with it, and part of that is forced into the Nerves upon every Fit; but from fuch a flatulent Cacochymia windy Spirits are always prepared. The

H

The Afthmatics are best Fasting, and under a very frugal and simple Diet, which I shall here mention, because I have had so much occasion to touch on many other particulars of Diet.

th

cir

山

tin

W

CI

M

The

They may use Water-Gruel cool, not hot, for Breakfast, or Toast and Water, as I have mentioned; and the same may be their Supper, if agreeable, or else Small Beer, or Ale, with Bread: The Asthmatic must eat for Dinner of one or two Distant most, Beef, Mutton, roast Veal, Rabbets, Birds, Pork.

All Water-Fowlis heavy, flimy, having too much of the moorifh crude Tafte in it.

All Pickles, Sauces, Oyfters, Salt Meats are very injurious to the Afthmatic, and all fmoak'd meats; for thefe raife a Fermentation too high in their Stomachs, and produce a great diffurbance in the Blood and Spirits.

Sallads and Fruits are too cold, and crude, and windy, for most Asthmatics; Cabbage, Turneps, Collisowers, all which are of the crefs Taste, and are found very windy on the Stomach of Asthmatics. The Afthmatic must eat no Flesh Suppers, for if he do, it frequently proves fatal, or elfe very suffocating if a Fit happen after it.

By all the Reflections on our Diet for the Althmatic, we learn, that the Medicine must be like the Diet, contrary to the Disease, that is, of a cooling, attenuating, carminative Temper, not spirituous, windy, viscid; and such is Galen's Medicine: The acid cools and discusses Wind, and the better attenuates the viscid Humours.

# Thirdly, Of Exercife.

All violent Exercife makes the Afthmatic to breath fhort, becaufe their Lungs are frequently opprefs'd with Tubercula; and if the Exercife be continued it occafions a Fit, by putting the Spirits to a great Expansion.

The most agreeable Exercise is Riding, the greatest are Sawing, Bowling, Ringing of a dumb Bell, Swinging, Dancing; Walking is more vehement than Riding, but not fo great as the other; those Exercises that move the Arms, exercises the Lungs most.

H 2

#### ( 100 )

In a Fit no motion is convenient till the Fit is going off; and I find Riding to help Expectoration; the rubbing of the Breaft heats it, and occafions the Fit; and the rubbing the extream Parts moves the Blood too much, though that is commended by Authors, and a Decoction of Guaicum to preferve Perfpiration of Windy Spirits.

00

Fit

po

pr

pe

m

tik

ti

by

41

th

They who use no Exercise in the Intervals of Fits, soon fall into Cachexies, Lethargies, Dropsies, through too much Serum, loss of Appetite, and Confumption, for want of Perspiration and Expectoration: But in the Fit all Exercise endangers Suffocation.

# Fourthly, Of the Paffions.

I will next defcribe the Effect of Paffions in producing the Fit. A fatal Orthopnea is defcribed by *Foreftus* from a Fright.

The Paffion of Anger makes the Spirits reftlefs, and apt to produce the Fit, and the Afthmatics obferve in themfelves great reftlefinefs of Spirits the day preceding the Fit; and *Hippocrates's Aphorifm* advifes all Afthmatics to abitain from Anger and Shouting. Fear,

### ( 101 )

Fear, Sollicitude, and much Study, difcomposes the Spirits, and produces a reftlefness in them, which may occasion a Fit; the Afthmatics are commonly Hypochondriacal, which the frequent Fits produce, though that is supposed to depend on the other.

Study inflames the Spirits, and too much rarefies them; and all violent motions of the Spirits quicken the Pulfe, and thereby produce the Afthma and Ephemera.

All the related occasions are observ'd by Helmont, who fays, Denique & alias qua ex potu sacchari, vini hispanici, ex ira, tristi nuntio, vel etiam objurgate luctuoso mox Asthmate corriperentur; and of these he gives Examples. And I have observ'd that Reading or Writing is very injurious in the Fits, and highly diforders the Asthmatic.

## Fifthly, Of Excretions, Natural, Phyfical, and Preternatural in the Afthmatic.

The Affhmatic always makes a great quantity of pale Water in the Fit, the first day, but at the going off the Water is of a high Colour, with a thick feverish Sediment. H 3 I

## ( 102 )

即加

I cannot perceive much drinefs or faintness to attend the pale Water; and fince that happens only in the beginning of the Fit, I cannot believe a true Diabetes occafions it, but rather an Effervescence of Humours, (which is at last evident by the high colour'd Water) may at the beginning of the Fit throw off a good quantity of crude Serum, which may be the matter of the pale Water ; but I am inclined to believe that the true caufe of the pale Water is the Afthmatic Itraitness, which ftops the Circulation of the Serum through the Lymphatics; for if the motion of the Lympha up the Thoracic ductus be forc'd by the compression of the Belly in Inspiration, in the Asthma, that being defective, and the motion of the Diaphragme being hindred, it must follow, that the Lympha must stagnate in the Lymphatics; and if that Serum which should return from the Kidneys through the Lymphatics be ftop'd in its Circulation, for want of the pressure of the Diaphragme, then all the Serum which comes in the Arteries into the Kidneys mult pais into the Ureters, because it cannot 'circulate through the Lymphatics; and this happens till the Serum is very much abated.

## ( 103 )

ted. I remember an Ingenious Experiment of Mr. Nuycke, who teaches us to make Ligatures on the Veins and Lymphatics, whereby the Liquor injected through the Arteries is forc'd into the Ureters; and this feems to confirm my Conjecture about the pale Water.

In the Fits of the Mother the pale Water flows in great quantity, because the motion of the Serum is ftop'd in the Lymphatics, by the convullive Constrictions, or the stop put to the motion of the Diaphragme.

A fat Woman, who lived long an Afthmatic, told me she found benefit by drinking her own Water, and that she observ'd that before the Fit came it grew very falt. I have tasted my own pale Water, but never observ'd it either sweet or four confiderably, but rather very falt.

Alum will not curdle it, as it does other nutritious Juices, which inclines me to believe that the pale Water is none of the nutritious Juices, but that this Serum ought to be carried off by the Fits, as appears by this, becaufe when it is stop'd a Dropfy ufually fucceds.

That the pale Urine is from the Serum is manifest, because it taltes as falt as any ordi-

H 4

### (104) ordinary Urine. I evaporated it in a Spoon, and it left only a brown faltisch Sediment; it smells as strong of Saltness as any ordinary Urine.

di

di

T

The quantity of pale Urine made in one Night was about two Quarts, though I drank not half a Pint at Supper time.

The Sediment left upon evaporation was not vifcid, but fandy and gritty, and tafted very falt, and therefore had none of the Succus Nutritius in it.

This pale Urine would not coagulate Milk though mixt with it, and therefore no great acid was in it.

From the part Reflections I conclude the pale Water to be the thin part of the Serum of the Blood, with a great quantity of Salt in it.

Helmont observ'd before the Fit, that the Saliva in an Asthma was falt; but this I was never sensible of in my felf, but that it is usually viscid or mucilaginous the day before the Fit.

As to Spitting and Coughing, that is common at the latter end of the Spitting Afthma, upon the going off of the Fit : The firft and fecond day they fpit little, but more the third, when the firaitness goes off, and then the mucilaginous Phlegm dige-

## (105)

digesting and putrifying, it loses its viscidity, and fo comes up eafier. The Phlegm indigested is like the White of an Egg, and the first Spits of the Asthma are streaked, or feathered, and like a Spiders Web, of a blackish colour, from Blood, or some acid Splenetic Juice, which probably being of a Salt nature, it fhoots into Figures: This Phlegm comes from the Glandulous Coat of the Trachea, which by the conftriction of the Bronchia is expressed from that Skin. This Spit Helmont calls Gutt as \* caruleas liquato tragacantho similes; it has the fame Pellucid clearness as that Gum diffolved : And he farther obferves, Ingravescente senio, graviores screatus, si quid forte sub finem exscreetur, tantillum id, non prioris & cause occasionalis rationem subire debet, sed potius producti vicem habet, ex magnà coarctatione, & injuria pulmoni illata. He believ'd it to be the Succus Nutritius of the Membranes, which later Anatomists know to be a glandulous Lympha.

Mr. Nuycke observes a Blackness in the excretory Vessels of the falivatory Glands, so that this black Humour is commonly mixed with the flimy Lympha.

# ( 106 )

di

Al

ret

tir

H

de

N

. 11

No Pectoral can do any thing towards the curing or preventing of the Fit, whether oily or deterfive, but at the latter end of the Fit, the oily and fweet Pectorals help the Expectoration of the vifcid Phlegm, which gathers in the Bronchia during their conftriction, and it is no occafion of the Fit, but the product of it; for if it were fo, the Fit would not come fo fuddenly as it does; and before the Fit I never was fenfible of an Opprefion or Stuffing of Phlegm, though I fpit much after a Fit.

Vomiting very much relieves the Afthmatic by evacuating a great quantity of this Phlegm, or mucilaginous Slime from the Stomach and Lungs, which appears to me all of the fame nature, but after fome fmall time the Fits will return again.

I have often vomited a Choleric Matter in the beginning of the Fit, which I imputed to the vehemence of the Fit, and fome compression on the Guts, or the Gall Bladder, and to be purely accidental.

I have difcourfed an Afthinatic, who was extreamly troubled with violent motions of Vomiting in the beginning of each Fit, and nothing compos'd it like drinking

# (107)

drinking Water; this Gentleman told me that he received much benefit by drinking Bath Water, which cured him of his Althma for fome Years, but the Afthma returning, he came to Bath the fecond time, where I met him; he was of a full Habit of Body, he drank the Waters, but durft not adventure to bathe; he lives near Northampton.

The giving of a Vomit will put fome Perfons into Fits, tho' it generally relieves the ftraitnefs and opprefifion at Stomach in all Afthmatics, but that will foon return, and the Phlegm be again evacuated into the Stomach. The breeding of this great quantity of mucilaginous Slime both in the Stomach and Lungs, depends much on the frequent ftop given to Circulation of Humours by the Afthma Fit; for 'tis the motion of Humours, and quick circulation that diffolves the mucilaginous Liquors of Animals; but if they once remit that motion, they naturally thicken like Gelly-Broth as it cools.

The want of the motion of the Diaphragme in the Althma Fit, may occation the stagnation of the Contents in the Guts, as well as the Chylein the Lacteals, and also the Blood in the Mefentery; for these

# ( 108 )

K

Bi

ble

in

ral

be

th

be

th

til

R

en

P

th

thefe are all helped by its deprefion in Refpiration: From this ftagnation of Humours the Guts may be irritated into Inflations, which will hinder their natural Periftaltic Motion, and all the Humours ftagnating will be much rarefied, become windy, and fwell their Veffels, fo that the Afthma has thefe degrees; Firft, there is a ftraitnefs in the Bronchia and Veficulæ, that hinders the defcent of the Diaphragme, and the defect of that gives the pale Water and Inflations in the Belly.

Bleeding, though never fo oft repeated, will not cure the Affhmatic, but a little for the prefent relieve the ftraitnefs and fuffocation. It is agreeable to young Perfons, but very prejudicial to old habituated Affhmas, who at prefent are not much relieved thereby, but after fome time they become Cachectic.

No Diuretic Balfam, or Turpentine, can prevent a Fit, nor cure it, but they rather make it worfe, by rarefying and heating the Humours and Spirits.

Some Perfons during fome critical Evacuations, as Dyfuria, Loofnefs, or Ulcers, have no Fits of the Afthma; and I have heard fome commend Iffues on that account; and I have been inform'd that King

## ( 109 )

King William during the running of the Sore upon his Shoulder, made by the bruife of the Cannon-Bullet at the Battel of the Boyne in Ireland, was free from any trouble of his Afthma.

I have observ'd the Afthma to be better in some after the Legs begin to swell, because then the Blood is not so much inclined to Ferment, nor the Spirits to be rarefied; I have known others much better by copious Urine which relieved them.

A Gentlewoman about 60 Years old being always Afthmatic, fell into a Diarrhæa, by which the was freed from Stone, Cholic, and Afthma; but that being permitted too long, run her into a Confumptive ftate, and extreamly wafted her fat Body, and difpofed her to Surfeit upon every occafion : I cured her by Rhubarb Purges, Steel, and Bitters. This Diarrhæa is dangerous to thin Afthmatics, if it be ftop'd it makes them worfe; in this cafe we must negle&t the original Difeafe, and cure it as an ordinary Scorbutic Diarrhæa, by Styptics, Laudanum, and Digeftives.

As to Sweat in a fevere Fit, 'tis very great fometimes, and in Bed very hot, and

#### ( 110 )

WI

W

he

W

Ex

be

m

W

he

UD

IN

and without any benefit to the Affhmatic, I have oft taken Spirit of Hartshorn to produce Sweat, and to put by the Fit, but it had not that effect, but made the following Fit more violent. The sitting up all Night does make the Afthmatic subject to Rheumatic Pains, and Cachexies.

As to Stools, the Afthmatic are feldom bound; and in the beginning of a Fit, as foon as they rife out of Bed, they have a loofe Stool, and most of them are easily Purged.

I could not find that by Purging I could commonly prevent a Fit, but I observ'd that Purging did frequently occasion the Fit; and if a Purge be given in the Fit, it causes an extraordinary Tumult in the Spirits, and endangers a Suffocation, for which reason I doubt of the fincerity of those Authors, who prescribe it in a Fit: It gives the same Disorder as Purging in a Fever, but is more dangerous.

I knew an Afthmatic who made a great quantity of pale Water, and had running Pains in his Limbs; the pale Water made him lean and fainty, though it tafted fomewhat brackifh, and not fweet, as he informed me; he had trequent Fits once in 14 days, he was oft eas'd by Vomiting with.

## ( 111 )

1¢

55

0-

n

15

C

Y

d

d

C

ty

10

of fo

1;

n

at

00 00

e

with Oxmel Scilliticum, and Oil; that which was peculiar in this cafe was, that he was always very much bound, for which he ufed Clyfters, Lenitive Elect. Extract. Ecph. cum Aloe, and for his Diabetes, Aqu. calcis Composita: This Afthma was very grievous as oft as the Body was bound extraordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily, and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily healways and to that healways imputed his Fit: This Afthma, upon the straordinarily healways healw

What Salivation can do in the Afthma I know not; but fince no Evacuation which I have mentioned, as Purging, Bleeding, Vomiting, Sweating, Diuretics or Pectorals, can either cure or prevent the Fits, as I have experienc'd, though they have fometimes reliev'd and palliated it, I must confess I cannot expect any benefit by Salivation (unlefs it can cure fome of the Scrophilous Tubercula of the Lungs) for Salivation is only the great Evacuation of the Serum of the Blood, it depresses the Fermentation of the Blood more than raifes it, and the Blood becomes more viscid after Salvation, which is injurious to the Afthmatic straitness : But that I might

#### (112)

山山

ha

20

10

me

N

F

Alt

the

fto

th

ma

a m Me

Riz

CUI

rat

the

ret

and Date

might be better fatisfied about the fuccefs of Salivation, I defired my Ingenious Friend Dr. Gibbons, that he would communicate the fuccels of fome Experiment he had made in the Afthma, of which he gave me the following Account, in his Letter to me on the 20th of September, 94. I have once or twice given Mercurial Medicines in an Afthma with fuccefs; but the Patients were Leprous likewife, which induced to me give them. — I have found Gas Sulphuris frequently given, very efficacious when other things have fignified nothing. — And in Hyiteric Afthma's, Laudanum feldom fails.

# Sixthly, Of Sleep and Waking, how they affect the Afthmatic.

I have obferv'd the Fit always to happen after Sleep in the Night, when the Nerves are filled with windy Spirits, and the heat of the Bed has rarefied the Spirits and Humours, but the next day Sleep composes the diforder of the Spirits.

The Night before the Fit the drowfinefs and flight Headach are figns of the Matter entring into the Nerves, and it is like the Sleepinefs in the beginning of the

# (113)

the Fit of an Ague, from an Oppression upon the Spirits by serous Humors, which then occasion also a Retching and Yawning.

I have found that by late fitting up, I have put by the Fit for a Night or two, and I have found it commonly neceflary to rife out of Bed, especially in the Summer time, and to fleep in a Chair the first Night of the Fit; two Nights before the Fit Afthmatics want fleep frequently.

Narcotics are accounted dangerous to Afthmatics by fome Authors, becaufe they apprehend that they make a greater ftoppage in the Breath and Pulfe, and thicken the vifcid Humours of the Afthma, if given in any great Dofe; but if in a moderate quantity, they are the fitteft Medicines to compress the Inflations; and *Riverius*'s Experience confirms it, and all our Moderns, as well as the Antient Writers, ufed it in the Afthma.

I with we had in common use a Preparation of Opium with an acid, that I am certain would prove more agreeable to the Afthma, because the acid bett corrects the Opium, and that makes all acrid and bitter Medicines more fuitable to that Dufease.

Tle

ep

1.

he

lit of

e

## (114)

bec

ho

do

pon

Its -

eve

of

Op

曲

the

mu

gu th

Oti Ca

Wh

ton

Va

01

600

the

ting

the

Cin

The Antient Writers often object against the knowing of the Nature of all Medicines by the Tastes; that Narcotics are hot by being bitter, acrid and foetid, and yet they cool the Humors and thicken them.

To which I may Answer, that Narcotics by those Tastes produce hot Effects, as well as cool in our Humours; Narcotics are Diuretics, and evidently Diaphoretics, by their bitterness and acrimony, and they caufe an itching in the Skin fometimes; many of them are also Vomitories, and Purgers, as Tobacco, which is a Solanum, and Solanum lignofum is Purging; all which Qualities depend on the Acrimony of them. But belides this Tafte, there is an evident mucilage in Narcotics, as appears in Poppy-leaves, which always cools; but the chief Effects of Opium lies in the fetid Smell, which being destructive to the Spirits by a particular texture of its Principles, they being stupified, evaporated, or made lefs elastic; the motion of the Heart and Circulation of Humours are ftop'd, on which the coolnefs and vifcidity accidentally depends, that all these Effects are produc'd by the hot Taftes of the Narcotic is plain, becaufe

# ( 115 )

becaufe ftrong Spirits long used, and all hot Regimens, as hot Baths, hot Drinks, do accidentally chill our Bodies, and evaporate our Spirits: Camphire cools by its difcuffing Quality, being a volatil acrid oilous Salt, it opens the Pores, and evaporates hot Humours. The Nature of other Poifons, as Vegetables, lies in their Fœtor and Acrimony, as well as in Opium, which we can never Mechanically explain, becaufe we never can know the Textures of the Vegetable Juices, nor the Nature of Animal Spirits; but we must be contented, that we can diftinguish by our Tastes and Smells those Plants that are Narcotic and Poifonous from other Plants, by their offenfive Foetors and Corrolivenels.

y,

е-

0-

h

IS

011

is

In

25, 95

ch

ar-

be-

els

11-

ch

de-

c'd

m,

I shall next describe those Diseases which produce the Asthma as a Symptom.

15t. The Suppreffion of the natural Evacuations of Blood by the Hæmorrhoids or Menfes, which being ftop'd, do occafion a great Oppreffion of the Lungs, by the Vifcidity or Fulnefs of Blood Itagnating in the Blood Veffels, which oft makes them varicofe, and not only hinders the Circulation there, but occasions a com-I 2 preffion

# ( 116 )

up Br

care fing

tati

this

the

the

gin

ing

Con

tan

man beir

and

bro

pe

mo

Dut

by t

the

For

26

preffion on the Bronchia and Veficulæ, for the Veins and Arteries accompany the feveral Branches of the Trachea, which keep the middle, and the Veins lie over them, and the Arteries underneath; and by this it appears, that the Stagnation of the Chyle or Blood in those Veffels, may compress the Bronchia, and by that produce a constant Wheezing in them; and this is to be cured by reftoring the deficient Evacuations of Blood. This ftoppage of the Hæmorrhoids I have obferv'd increase the Fits in many Afthmatics, who were troubled with them, and during their Flux the Afthma was very much relieved. monotion has appointed tous and

This ftop of the Hæmorrhoids is an occasion of a Scorbutic Spitting of Blood in many Afthmatics; this Hawking up Blood return'd every Afternoon in a particular Afthmatic towards four of the Clock, and I could not ftop it by any Evacuations, or Styptics; but the Cortex immediately cured it.

2dly, By a great quantity of Blood Plethoric Perions have an Oppreffion in the Lungs, which gives them a Dyfpnæa, till it be emptied by profuse Bleeding, and Purging, with a spare Diet. 3dly, A

# (117)

101

the

/er

nd

of

lay

10-

nd

efi-

opv'd

tho

ng

re-

an

boc

up

121-

the

any

tex

le-

the

till

and

1, A

3 dly, A Polypus in the Heart and Lungs, upon any motion gives a Shortnefs of Breath, becaufe the Blood cannot freely circulate through them, without oppreffing the Bronchia; this gives alfo a Palpitation and intermitting Pulfe, and upon violent motion they die fuddenly; and this is incurable.

4thly, The Coagulation of the Chyle in the Lungs produces the Afthma, and of these Althmas there are many Instances given in Authors: This arifes from drinking cold Water, or washing in it whilst the Body is very hot, which by a fudden compression of rarefied Humours coagulates them, and from hence came the Catarrhus Suffocativus, which fuddenly kills many Children, who drink cold Water being hot : This is without Intermiffion, and accompanied with a Fever. Upon this I believe the Pulmonic Afthma in broken Winded Horfes, frequently depends; it is a continu'd Afthma upon any motion, they have a dry Cough at first, but after fome time they vent fome Slime by their Noftrils, and are easier whilst their Bodies are kept open by a moift Food; they have a dry Cough, which is a fign of fome great Obstruction in the I 3 Lungs; 22013

## (118)

tin

art

O

đ

ha

555-th

and

for

to

山

int

of

th

W

P

ha

ha

Lu for for th

tiv

ma

ac

Lungs; they breath thick and fhort, which differs from the Afthma, becaufe that is a high Breathing, and the Infpirations are very high, and both Infpiration and Expiration very rare and flow, the Muscles in the Abdomen, which cause Expiration, labour as well as the Diaphragme, which helps Infpiration, as we may observe by the motion of the Flank out and inward : The Diaphragme, becaufe the Air is not freely admitted into the Lungs, moves but little downwards, as in ordinary Respiration, and the Expiration returns very quick, and caufes a trembling motion in the Flank of the Horfe thus affected.

The Crock in a Hawk is usually imputed to fome ftrain in the Membranes, which contains the Air in the Belly by hard Flying, and is never recover'd.

nisthly, The Viscid Serum in a Peripneumonial obstructs the Blood Vessels, and the Glandules of the Lungs with Viscid Phlegm, and the Dyspnæa produc'd by it is at first without Stertor, but that by long continuance strains the nervous Fibers and Membranes, and disposes them to Afthmatic Inflations. And from this cause the common Pneumonic Humid or Spitting

## (119)

ting Afthma takes its Original, which is attended with much Spit as the Fit goes off. It is observ'd that the inward Skin of the Trachza is Glandulous, Unctuofo bumore perfunditur contra aeris asperitatem; and by the Constriction of the Bronchia a great quantity of this is expressed during the Fit; for the Circulation of the Blood and Chyle being retarded by the Fit, fome of the Chylaceous Mass is obliged to pass the Glands of the Membranes in the Trachæa. If a Liquor be injected into the Arterial Vein of the Lungs, fome of it will pass into Trachæa, and this way the flimy Spit paffes in the Afthma Fit; which by its colour and confiftence appears of a Chylous Nature.

e

1e

k

to

S,

1-

2

16

**n**-

by

nd id

bord id

市肥

t-

15

These Pneumonic Spitting Afthma's have been observ'd upon Diffection to have Tubercula or Schirrosity in the Lungs, and they frequently turn to an Abscifes, and that into an Empyema; but that small Tubercula alone will not produce the Afthma is plain, because all Confumptive People who have them are not Afthmatic.

The Lungs usually in these Afthma's adhere to the Sides, which makes only short Breath'd upon any motion, for which I 4 Incon-

## ((1201))

ant

W

the

and

th

TU:

W

fi

21

10

Cat

Inconvenience Authors commend the motion of the Arms and Breaft, and Emollient Bathes, and Milk; but all these Afthmatics usually die Confumptive.

This Pulmonic Afthma depended originally on a Fever, and fo does the feveral Fits of it, which force fome Chylaceous Lympha through the Glandules of the Lungs, and that produces the Spitting Afthma.

These Fits come fuddenly, and with out any sense of Matter collected in the weakned Glands before the Asthma Fit, but it flows through them in the Fit, so that an Inflammation of the Lungs does not produce the Asthma in all Persons, but only the Spitting Symptoms in those who have a Cacochymia, which disposes them to this Disease, or elfe it occasions large Tubercula.

6thly, The Stones in the Lungs produce an Afthma, which is continued, and not periodic: Of this Helmont gives a remarkable Inftance, Invenitur finistri lateris lobus in diffecto corpore durus, & è pumice lapidescens, plurese; ejusmodi lapillos sparsim per pulmonis regionem vidi. This was the case of a Presbyter who lived a scher Life, but of a fudden grew Hoarfe, and

#### ( 121 )

and afterwards Afthmatic; he lived a Year with this Difeafe.

15

¢

go

h

1¢

lt,

10

es

ns,

es

<u>as</u>

0-

2

5.

1-

his

da

fe,

od

7thly, In the Pica and other Cachexies. the viscid Chyle stagnates in the Lungs, and occasions a Dyspnaa; and the Cachectical Serum in the Hydropical fills the Lymphatics of the Lungs with Serum, and extends them into Hydatides, which opprefies the Lungs, and gives a Dyfpnæa, and these frequently break and fill the cavity of the Breaft with Water, and then the Legs fwell, and they can never lie down without danger of Suffocation ; there is a flow mild Fever, a dry Cough, great Thirst, an Ebullition or Fluctuation of Water, fainting Fits, a painful Anxiety about the Cartilago Enfiformis, a Blackness in the Face: In this cafe fome Antihydropical Wine is neceffary to Purge off the Serum.

This is Horstins's Prescription : 12A

Take Roots of Enula, Campana, Orris, ad 3fs. Liquorifb 3ii. Sena 3x. Agaric Trochfe 3fs. Tops of Elder 3iii. Leaves of Carduus, Horehound, of each M.i. Flowers of Elder, Cham. ad P.i. Seeds of Fennil, Rue, &c. 3i. Raifins 3i. Ginger, Mace, Cinnamon, ad 3fs. Saffron 9fs. make an Infufion in this of White Wine, take a draught for four days. VoVomiting relieves them, and ftrong Purging, with Diuretic Salts and bitter Vinegars.

(120)

8thly, A long Catarrh ends in an Afthma, for that enlarges the Passages of the Glands into the Trachea, and disposes them to receive any flux of mucilaginous Slime, upon any Effervescence of Humors, and this ufually happens in the great Changes of the Year, and gives an Anniverfary Afthma, which a Catarrh precedes and accompanies, and that ends in much Spitting. It may be observ'd, if the Afthmatic catch Cold, and have a Rheume in the Teeth, Throat, or Head, within a Night or two the Fit will follow. In this cafe 'tis plain the Effervescence which ufually attends all Catarrhes, pufhes fome flimy Lympha on the Lungs, which produces the Fit.

As the Peripneumonia produces a Fit of the Afthma in those disposed to it, and cannot produce it in others not so prepared; so it is in Catarrhs, the Phlegm abounding in a Catarrh cannot produce the Afthma in those who are not disposed to it, but it lays the ground for the Spitting in the Afthma, and excites a disposition to that Disease, which was latent before; and

# ( 123 )

and whenfoever the Chylaceous Matter gathers or flows into the Glands, it irritates the Bronchia, and gives the Conftriction of the Blood and Air Veffels to produce another Fit.

A young Boy had the Afthma almost from his Birth, upon catching Cold, which occasion'd a great running at his Nose, and constant Wheezing; no Medicines relieved him, but he died fuddenly, being one Year and half old.

If a long Catarrh produces any Tubercula in the Lungs that are large, and they conftantly opprefs the Bronchia, by that means a conftant Afthma may be produced which is truly Pulmonic, like that in Broken-winded Horfes, which frequently comes after a long Cold, and they are Afthmatic upon any motion.

The fign of the Breeding of a Tuberculum, is when any one in good Health begins to breath fhort, and as that encreafes a Stertor is obferv'd in Breathing. There is an Example in *Hippocrates* of the Daughter of *Agafus*, who being a Girl, breath'd fhort from a crude Tuberculum, which did not eafily digeft, but when fhe was with Child it broak, and fhe became Afthmatic. By this we find that a Tuberculum

11

B

to

### ( 124.)

berculum may produce the Afthma, whofe Fit will return as oft as the Chylaceous Matter fills that Tumor, for then it muft conftringe the Bronchia, and that Afthma is truly Symptomatical, depending on that Tumor, and not the windy Cacochymia.

The Itch repelled, or Ulcers ftop'd up, may occafion an Afthma, by filling the Blood with too much malignant Serofity, and that either flows through the Glandules of the Lungs or Brain, and excites an Effervefcence in the Humours.

If a flux of Serum falls on the Stomach, and Inteffines, that occasions Gripes and Inflations there, and many loofe Stools, and then the Afthma Fit appears very little in the Nerves, the Fits are very Thort, and little Spitting happens; thefe fort of Fits frequently happen from a Catarrh, as appears by a Loofness, but if any defluxion of Serum oppresses the Bronchia, it caufes much Spit, and the ftraitness on the Bronchia, and the same Inflation there in its muscular Membranes, which happen in those in the Belly, when the Defluxion of Serum runs through those Glands, but if the Defluxion of Serum paffes the Glands of the Brain, the ftrait-Dercularing

ftraitness is most with dulness in the Head, and the Fit is longer.

9thly, The Althma depends on Fevers, the Small Pox oft leaves viscid Matter in the Lungs, which upon any Effervescence of Blood stops that, and the Chyle, and that stoppage occasions an Inflation in the Lungs. I am certain the Small Pox encreated the Althma in my felf, and others I have discoused with. Horstins gives an Example of an Asthmatic who died of an Imposthume in the Lungs in that Diseafe.

A Young Gentleman about Twenty, was taken with an Afthma after a Pleurify, which Spring and Fall gave him great trouble, but after he had had the Small Pox, his Afthma was very fevere, and drew his Breath with more difficulty. He complain'd to me of straitness in the Sternum about the middle of it; he could lie on either fide, and does not Wheeze: The straitness takes him in a Morning, and Spits more now than at first; he found fome Benefit by this Method, by gentle Vomiting, and Purging with gentle Pills, and Caftor Pills at Night. I anointed him with Anticonvulfives, and Emollients; he used an Antiscorbutic Diet-Drink, and an Anti-afthmatic Syrup ; by these he continu'd

# (126)

tinu'd well fome time, but the Fits return fometimes; I gave him the Cortex, but it occafion'd more straitness at the Stomach.

Intermitting Fevers are often the occafions of the Afthma Fit, as appears by the Inftances above mentioned, and then it cannot be cured without a plentiful Dofe of the Cortex; but Bleeding, Vomiting, Clyfters, and Blifters must precede, and in great Faintness Anti-spafmodics.

About Eight Years fince I had an Intermitting Fever, with Swooning Fits every Afternoon, to this I impute the fetled Periods of my Afthma: In this I ufed great quantities of the Cortex, and 3ii. of Spirit of Hartfhorn every Day, which then very much reliev'd me; but no Pectorals nor Balfams, or Purging, Vomiting, Bleeding, nor a long ufe of the Cortex would put any ftop to the Periods of the Fits, till I ufed an Oxymel hereafter defcribed, and bitter Thea of Buckbean, with an exact Diet.

A Gentlewoman of a lean Habit of Body had been Afthmatic from her Youth, after fhe had had the Small Pox, to which fhe imputed it; but thefe Fits came feldom but upon taking Cold, or the turns of the Year; but after the Quar-

tan

12

A at Ci fte

ca F di

th

W

SS W

A

m

A

限曲

0

OF

ha D. C. F.

Al

# ( 127 )

tan Ague, which was cured by the Cortex, it came frequently towards Morning, and fhe had also a pain on the left Side. I gave her a Vomit of Oxymel Scilliticum, she Purg'd with Pil de Hiera cum Agarico, de Succino, ad Di. once in a week, afterwards the used a Decoction of the Cortex with an Hysteric Julep, and Hysteric Pills, with an Afthmatic Syrup, because she was very subject to Hysteric Fits, and did not Spit after her Fits; fhe drank an Antifcorbutic Diet Drink, and the Decoction of Bitters, without Sena. for a long time, by which the continu'd well for Twelve Months, but then the Ague return'd again with the Afthma Fits, which were cured by the fame method. And by this Inftance, and the former I mention'd, I learn, that the Hysteric Afthma depended on an Intermitting Fever, as well as the Spitting Afthma, and that both of them have the fame Periods. of which I must observe two forts; for the one, in Pulmonic or Hyfteric Afthma's, happens once in Ten Days, or Fourteen Days at fartheit; and the other only upon Changes of the Year, when Intermitting Fevers return ufually; therefore fuch Afthmatics ought to use the Cortex Spring

# (128)

Spring and Fall, after Vomiting, Bleeding, and Purging.

I knew a Divine, who after the Quartan Ague was every Spring feized with the Althma, to whom I recommended the method mention'd.

Every Fever will not occasion an Afthma Fit, neither had I any in the Small Pox; therefore where the Afthma is a Symptom, there seems to be a crude flatulent Cacochymia in the Blood before the Fever came, and a flatulency of Spirits, which being rarefied by the Fever, produces the Afthmatic Symptoms, with Windiness in the Stomach, much Spitting, Intermitting Pulse, Palpitation, Coldnefs, Fainting; which Symptoms oft appear, attending an Aftmatic Fever. If Tubercula in the Lungs stop'd the Feverish Blood, and occasion'd the Afthma, then that would happen in all Fevers to Afthmatics, which I am certain does not, but fome Intermitting Fevers occasion it; and upon curing that, it goes into its old Periods again.

m

ij

20

b

t

Ve

th

0

8

Mr. B. of Warwicksbire, was first feiz'd by the Asthma in Spain, as he thought by eating of Fruits there; he was then Twenty-five Years old, and was forc'd to leave that

# ( 129 ))

that Country, becaufe when the Rains fell it violently held him.

His Grandfather had the Afthma, and died of it about the Fortieth Year of his Age; but his Father and Mother were very healthful, and never had any Afthma; but fome of his Brothers and Sifters are fubject to the fame Difease, fo that it was a Difease in the Family, but yet missed one Generation.

re

r,h

t.

۵,

ns

er. Fe-

it,

23

by

en-

re

at

This Gentleman for the fpace of Ten Years was Afthmatic in a high degree, for which he oft bled, which made him Confumptive; his Stomach was apt to Surfeit by Eggs, Sallads, potted Meats, which gave fevere Fits; he used Steel, and Gums, and volatil Salts, which did him great Injury. In London Air his Fits were much as in the Country ; about the Thirty-fifth Year of his Age he had a Fever, and then his Fits left him for Three Years, but he Spit and Coughed much more, and that way evacuated the Matter of the Afthma; at last an Intermitting Fever returned on him, but the usual Method proved unfuccefsful, and the Cortex oppressed his Stomach, Asses Milk purged him, no Pectorals relieved him; he drank Sarfa Drinks, Emulfions, Pearl Tuleps K

## ( 130 )

Juleps with Balf. Sulp. Anis in Syrup of Balfam, and other Balfams; he died Hectic in the Winter; I open'd his Thorax, and found the Lungs to flick to the Pleura on both fides ; there were many Tubercula in his Lungs, and fome purulent Matter, and I found a fmall Schirrus on the Skin: This Confumption was introduced by the Intermitting Fever, and probably all the Tubercula were the Effects of it. Afthmatics have no fhort Cough betwixt the Fits, which makes me doubt whether they commonly have any Tubercula, especially when I observe they can use great Motion without Wheezing.

it by a fudden Inundation of Matter occafions a fatal Afthma.

An Empyema opprefies the Lungs as the Dropfy does, and hinders their Expanfion, and the Empyema has a great Fever in the beginning, which grows milder as foon as any Matter is concocted, and then it has all the Signs of a Confumption to accompany it.

It usually succeeds the breach of a Vein, or Vomica Sanguinea, the Inflammation of the Lungs or Pleura, the Quinfey, Lethargy. W

## (131)

thargy, Wound or Ulcer, Pthific, or the ripening of a Tuberculum.

11thly, Every external Compression of the Lungs, may cause a Pulmonic Asthma, as too much Fat about the Heart, the growing of the Lungs to the Diaphragme, Pericardium.

e

15

1.

d

f.

R

es

ė

e

e-

15,

ę.,

IS

tl-

er

35

61

10

10,

CI

V.

The Gibbous are Afthmatic, becaufe of the contortion of the Spinal Marrow, the compression of the Nerves, or the ill shape of the Cavity of the Breast, which straitens the Lungs.

The Afthma often caufes a Gibbolity in young Perfons, and that is observed to be fatal *ante Pubertatem*.

I have described the several kinds of Compression of the Lungs, or Bronchia, by which Inspiration is hindred, as too much Blood, a Polypus, Coagulation of Chyle, Hydropical Serum, Tubercula, Empyema, and all external Accidents that compress the Lungs, but there remains one other, which is in the Cavity of the Belly, wiz,

12thly, The Tumours of the Viscera, which produce a spurious Asthma, as that of the Liver, Spleen, Kidneys, Pancreas, and all Hydropical Tumours: I remember a Patient who had a great Tu-K'2 mour

# (132)

mour on the left fide of his Belly, which gave a great Dyfpnæa; I found in him upon Diffection, a Bladder filled with clear Salt Water, containing about a Gallon of it; this Bladder grew on the Spleen, and ftuck to the Mufcles of the Belly, fo that if it had been tapped, it would have funk, and the Water might have been evacuated; this Tumour by its greatnefs ftop'd the motion of the Diaphragme, and caufed that Dyfpnæa that killed him.

I once observed a Diabetes to end in a Tumour amongst the Muscles of the Belly, which gave the Patient a continual Cough, Rheum, and Shortness of Breathwhen he lay down, but he had no Cough all day, and this ended in a Consumption.

Those who have a Dyspnæa from the Tumours of the Belly, can sleep and breath easiest lying on their Belly.

The Inflation in the Guts and Stomach which happens by a flux of Serum on them on great Changes of Weather, often gives a fhort Fit with Windinefs, whichhinders the defcent of the Diaphragme, and that gives the difficulty of Infpiration.

TOTIT

I fhall

ſ

mB

## (133)

I shall next describe those Symptomatic Afthmas, which fucceed Cephalic Difeafes.

1st. I have observed an Asthma in very old Perfons after a flight touch of an A+ . poplectic Fit, or Giddiness, which at first makes them to fall to the Ground ; this Afthma lafts fome weeks, and fometimes months, with loss of Appetite, and it ends in Oedematous Tumours of the Legs, and there feems to me always in this cafe a Dropfy in the Breaft: Vomits of Oxymel very much relieve these Patients: Bitters and Diuretics agree, but Purging did never agree with them: I have given fome of them ftrong Purgers without much advantage. This Afthma in half a Years time proving fatal to these Patients. I have observed this to happen to freshcolour'd old Men, that have fipped much, though not very intemperately of ftrong Liquors, and every Night they have fevere Fits, but in the day also a continued Dyfpnæa.

The Gout alfo oft ends in a fatal Dyfpnæa. A Gouty Lady who first had an Apoplectic Fit, by Medicines had her Head very much cleared of that, but a levere Afthma in a small time succeeded, neither

h

e,

paiston.

K 3

# (134)

neither Bleeding, Blifters, or any volatile Medicines gave the least relief.

Dr. Willis describes a Convulsive Afthma after Headach, Giddiness, and Lethargy.

I have observed an Afthmatic Fit to feize Perfons who were in an Intermitting Fever, with an Inflammation of the Lungs, and Delirium, and this proves always fatal, notwithstanding Bleeding, Bliffers, &c. The Blood in these cases is very Rheumatic, and there is a great pain in the hinder part of the Head.

2dly, Hyfterical Fits frequently occafion the Afthma, becaufe the Convultions oft ftop the motion of the Diaphragme, and binding and ftraitning the Bronchia and blood Veffels, by the Nerves, which encompass them, that disposes all the difordered or ill digested Spirits to move that way, to inflate and conftringe the Lungs and Heart.

Hippocrates imputes the hyfterical Difeafe very much to Wind, becaufe of the frequent eructations, and windinefs of the Belly, or pains of Back or Loins: This windy Spirit in hyfterical Fits is more futious, and inflates the Muscles, but in the Afthma the high flatulencies being evaporated,

#### (135)

porated, they only inflate the nervous Fibres of the Membranes of the Lungs: And we may obferve the hyfterical Fits to end in the Afthma, and for that reafon it must be a less degree of expansion than the Spirits have in the hysteric Fits. Hysterical Women hold their breaths long through the Convulsion of the Muscles of the Belly during their Fit, and therefore may by stopping the motion of the breath, strain the Nerves and Membranes, and dispose them to receive windy Spirits, when admitted into the Nerves.

The frequent Convultions, by retarding the motion of Humours, may at laft make them mucilaginous and flimy, by which they are better prepared to retain the Spirits in the form of Wind, and the frequent diforders of the Spirits fpend much of the volatile Parts, fo that the Spiritsafter long Fits, have neither a true volatility, or a thin Lympha to float in, and upon thefe accounts the Spirits become Afthmatic, and the folid Parts are difpofed to the fame, by the Convultions' and Strainings mentioned.

f

W

R. IS

he

29

Helmont calls this hysterical Afthma, Caducum Pulmonis; and he affirms of it, Quicquid Epilepticum Adultum fanat, fanat etiam Afthmaticum. It

# (136))

It will not be improper here to com pare the Fits of the Spitting and Hyfte rical Afthma.

Br

til

B

gl

ar

be

th

tr

W

W

In the Spitting Afthma there is no lefs Inflation of the Lungs, and the fame rigidity in the Spitting Afthma, as in the Hyfterical, which is commonly called a Convultion, but is more like a continued Inflation, or Catalepfis.

The Lungs in the Spitting Afthma are vitiated by Tumours frequently, which ftop the Circulation of the Blood, Spirits, and Chyle, and the filling the Lungs, may produce the Inflation, or Rigidity, and then this conftriction may be called a Symptom of the Difeafes of the Lungs; but in the Hyfteric Afthma, the Difeafe firft began in the Nerves, where a conftriction is made on the blood Veffels, and Bronchia, and thofe Humours ftagnating help the Inflation and Rigidity of the Lungs by their fulnefs.

The Hysteric Afthma in time degenerates into the Spitting, after Humous have been oft ftop'd on the Lungs by frequent Fits, and the Glandules there filled and become Schirrous Tubercula, they obstruct the Circulation of Chyle, caufing it to pass in finall quantities into the Bron-

## (137))

Bronchia, where it caufes the Spit.

Those who are most subject to the Spitting Afthma, who are of a lean Habit of Body, and are subject to Rheums, and glandulous Swellings in their Youth, which are inclining to the Scrophulous Obstructions; these are most subject to the Tubercula of the Lungs, and much Spitting; they have too much Appetite, and are troubled with Hypochondriacal Flatuofities.

I obferved fome fat Hyfterical Women who have had the Hyfterical Afthma, in which they Spit little after Twenty Years continuance, but have the fame fort of Spit as the lean Afthmatic, clear and mucilaginous, ftreaked with black.

Whatfoever Caufes produce the Fit of the Hyfterical Afthma, produce the fame in the Spitting Afthma, as Changes of Weather, Heat and Cold, violent Motions, Paffions, Wine, Surfeits; in neither kind of Afthma can they bear the heat of the Bed; fince the fame Caufes produce the Fits in both forts of Afthmatics, there is certainly the fame Effervefcence in both, which occafions the Fits, and that is plainly proved; for at the end of the hyfteric Afthma Fit, the Water appears feverifh,

e

e.

Ve

nt d

D.

ng he

1.

# (138)

feverifh, with a thick Sediment; and I obferve that there is the fame Interval betwixt the hyfteric Afthma Fits, as there is in the fpitting Afthma; and there is the fame quantity of pale Water in both kinds of Afthma.

Since therefore these two kinds agree in the fame fort of Constriction of the Bronchia, in the fame Effervescence of Humours, occasioned by external Causes, all these two kinds differ in, is, the first occasion that produced them, and the Spitting attends the one and not the other, the reason of which I impute to Inflammation of the Lungs, or a Catarrh, and the other rifes after Hysterical Fits, or a Fever.

lis

1

H

D

hi

of

an

ch

H

00

A

H

fo

In both forts there is the fame flatulent and mucilaginous Cacochymia, which by the Effervescence is forced upon the Lungs in the one, and on the Nerves in the other.

3dly. Hypochondriac Fits occasion another fort of Althma, without Wheezing; the Breath is short, the Sternum oppreffed, flatulencies are in the Stomach, giddiness in the Head, with fear of Swooning; in these the Lungs are not much affected, but the Sternum, or Membranes of

asi ov Da

# (139)

of the Breaft, as the Mediastinum, and this must be cured as the original Cause requires, by Vomiting, Purging, Chalybeats, and Cephalics.

4thly. When the Scurvy affects the Nerves with too much fharp Serum, it produces the Afthma Convulsivum, with straitness of the Breast. This is Dr. Willis's Opinion; and for that he uses volatile Spirits, Tincture of Antimony, Sulphur, Castor, Lavender, Flowers of Sal Armoniac, Benzoin, Elixir Proprietatis: He prescribes Sudorifics, sharp Clysters, Diuretics, for the evacuating of the Serum.

Dr. Willis relates a Hiltory of a Convulfive Afthma, from the Serum in the hinder part of the Head, and violent Fits of the Afthma feizes them in lying down; and this fucceeds other Difeafes, or Cachexies, and is a deplorable ftate.

Zecchius observes an Asthma without Stertor; when the Constriction or Anguitia falls on the blood Vessels, more than on the Bronchia, he imputes the Cause of Asthma wholly to a Catarrh from the Head, and prescribes the usual methods for it to the Head, which is as absurd as the explication of a Catarrh descending thence;

0-

いい

.

nat-

ot

# (140)

thence; yet we must allow that in the Althma there is a real flux of Serum, either through the Lungs or Nerves, and all defluxions like the Afthma are apt to return.

Zecchius observes many other useful things relating to the Afthma, which I will mention.

13t. He observes that Affhmatics are hurt by hot Medicines, and that in cold Climates, if dry, they have best Health, and that the South Wind is injurious; for the heat of their Liver, that is, their Blood (of which the old Writers made the Liver the Fountain) he advises, the depurated Juice of Cichory, and Goats-whey; he observes also a Crudity in the Stomach.

20

. 旧

2dly. He observes that the Asthma is Respiratio tarda, magna, rara; and to his Honour be it, that no other Authors, who generally call the Asthma Respiratio Densa, have given a true Description of it but he; and he observes the Cough the Asthmatics sometimes have in Expiration, which puts then to great pain, because their Lungs are not full enough of Air to cause a Cough; he observes also, that the Urine is thick and turbid in the Fit. 3dly.

# (141)

3 dly. In the Fit he prefcribes Medicines mixt with Acids, thus,

Take simple Oxymel Zis. Oxymel of Squills zís. Sal Armoniac Di. Saffron iij. gr. powdered, or Ammoniacum Di. Musk iii. gr. Saffron ii. gr. with Oxymel of Squills; make Pills, take them in a Potch'd Egg. He commends this Cleanfer for the Lungs, Turpentine washed 31. Sulph. 31. Ammoniacum diffolved 3ii. make Pills, and let the Patient dilute his Wine with the Decoction of Milletoes.

a

h,

of d

i-

U-

彩

0.

15

115

10

110 fit

the

n.

jle

to

lat

11.

il.

ATTENTO TRALET

(III)

He observes the Przludia of the Fit to be a heavines in the Head, and a Distillation, with a fmall Cough, to prevent which Zecchius well advises a Clyfter, and a Blifter, and a Narcotic at Night and afterwards Ammoniacum diffolved in Oxymel, which cleanfes and dilates the Lungs, and dries them, without any immoderate heat. the Fithby evacuating

of fermenwert Humours from the Sto-

mach: and the firaining to Vomit diff.

pates the Inflations both mene Lungs and

al nevel could approve of a firong Vo-

mit in the Fith one ounced OxymelScyl-

dison mon

Hard and tome flimy Lympha is eva-

# (142)

# CHAP. IV.

# Of the Cure of the Asthma, both in the Fit, and out of it.

THE Cure of the Afthma Fits requires these following Intentions and Remedies:

First, To abate the quantity of the windy Chyle in the Belly by Clysters, if the Afthmatic be bound, which carry off the flatulencies : In the Fit they have generally loofe Stools; but in an extream Fir I once took a Clyster of Posset-Drink, Chamomile-flowers and Sugar, which immediately eased me, after the Fit had continued many days before.

Vomiting, if gentle, very much relieves the Fit, by evacuating a great quantity of fermenting Humours from the Stomach, and the ftraining to Vomit diffipates the Inflations both in the Lungs and Stomach, and fome flimy Lympha is evacuated from both.

21

m

Sp

I never could approve of a ftrong Vomit in the Fit, one ounce of Oxymel Scylliticum,

## (143)

liticum, and as much Oil of Sweet Almonds is fufficient, with Poffet-drink or warm Water. Much ftraining to Vomit is fuffocating, and it is impoffible to drink much in the Fit for the ufe of a ftrong Vomit, therefore my cultom is to fip about half an Ounce of *Acetum Scylliticum* without any mixture, which in a finall time makes me fick, and by the help of a Feather and warm Water, I Vomit fo much as to evacuate all the Contents of the Stomach, which very much relieves the ftraitnefs, though it does not always take off the Fit.

ie if a a in

k, h

ad

es

ty

to-

d

2-

v-

The

Secondly, To relieve the ftraitnefs, or conftriction in the Bronchia and Blood Veffels, which can no other way be fuddenly done if the Fit be extream, than by bleeding a fufficient quantity, for that helps the circulation through the Lungs, it empties the fulnefs of Humours; but this very little relieves the old Afthmatic, and ought not to be practifed upon common Fits, but only in great Extremities. *Thirdly*, The Rarefaction of the windy Spirit, both in the Stomach, Blood and Nerves, mult be compreffed by cool Liquors, as Toaft and Water with Gas Sulphuris, or Pectoral Ptylanes, but thefe by

their

#### (144)

their fweetness are apt to ferment, and create Wind, as Mead does; I rather prefer fair Water with an acid Spirit, or Sal Prunel, Niter, Sal Armoniac unprepared, fmall cold Beer, and Wine and Water and diffilled Milk are agreeable Liquors for acid Spirits or cool Salts; these compress the Inflations, check the Effervescence of Humours, and by their coolnefs much refresh the hot Spirits in the Fit: On the contrary, I have found by experience this very certain, that all hot Medicines, as volatile Salts, acrid, aromatic and Fetid Plants, all Chimical Sulphurs, Oils, and fpirituous Waters, though never fo carminative, endanger the fuffocating of the Afthmatic in the Fir, and very much difagree with them out of it : No folutions of Gum Ammoniacum, nor Caftor Medicines, nor the Cortex ought to be given in the Fit; the shortness of breath can bear no Pills, nor Bolus, nor Electuaries. Salts, or acid Spirits, in a carminative Julep, or Ptylan, are the best Anti-Afthmatic in the Fit ; the old Posca of Water and Vinegar, or Verjuice and Water, may do well in those who cannot purchafe other Medicines. is, or rettorer revisines, but thele by

theit

Take

B

ti

to

CU

and

tin

SI

W

## (145)

Take Sal Prunel, or Niter and Sal Armoniac, of each 3 fs. Sugar Candy 3 i. mix them, give 3 i in Milk-water, or the following Julep or Decoction.

Take Elder-flower Water, Rue, Black-Cherry, Chamomile-flower Water of each 3iv. Syrup of red Poppies 3ifs. mix them for a Julep.

100

Eľ

n

d

100

IT, ot

m, rex efs

101

n a veft fca nd

not

ake

Take Éryngo Roots candied 3ifs. Liquorifh 3ii. Barley 3fs, Raifins 3i. boil them in three Pints to two for a Ptyfan, add Syrup of Violets, or Syrup of Vinegar a. a. 3iii. These cool Febrifuges are to be used two or three times in a day, till the heat and straitness is repressed, according as the Stomach can bear them.

4thly. The motion of the Spirits may be turned to the extream Parts, by many Blifters applied to the Arms, and Legs, and Shoulders, which may difcharge a Serum from the Nerves.

5thly. After all the Evacuations mentioned, if neceffary at Night we ought to compose the Inflation of the muscular Membrane both of the Stomach and Lungs by gentle Opiates, at Bedtime thus; Take Diacodium and Oil of Sweet Almonds, mix equal parts of them with Sugar Candy; take a Spoonful or L two

# (146)

61

bo

dr

th

th

b

air

Ch

to

M

an

thi

CO

ag

W

or fo

th

L

die

two at Bed-time, till fleep comes: Or 10 or 12 drops of Laudanum Liquidum may be given in an Hyfterical Julep, which must be mild, and mixed with Gas Sulphuris. Dr. Willis fays, Pro fubitâ Dispnea mere spasmodica sedatione, nullum prafentius remedium expertus sam laudani opiati tinctura nostra, quippe somno ob repente spiritus inordinationes suas remittunt. I have ost drank Poppy-water 3iii. with Syrup of red Poppies 3vi. and Sal Prunel 3fs. to my very great Advantage.

If Caftor, Amber, Affafetida, volatile Salts, or Sulphurs be taken inwardly, they rarefy the Spirits, raife the Effervefcence, and drive the windy Spirits violently into the Nerves, whereby the Strangulation is increafed, by which Experience I find, that the contrary are only proper for the Afthma, *viz.* cool, watery Liquors, acids, Spirit, or cooling Salfo-acids, or fome Carminatives temper'd by Vinegar.

The Antient Phyficians in a Fit gave 3 iii. Aphronitri in 15 fs. of Mulfum ; fome of them ufually prefcribe a Spoonful in a Day.

Verum in his qui suffocantur Aphronitri 3111. cum aqua Mulsa syathis tribus prabe,

# (147)

& aliquando cum Cardamomo & statim auxiliatur Ægineta.

h

2.

d-

1.

ste I

th

nel

ile

y,

-15

10-

the

X-

017-

nl,

ing

em-

12Te

m ;

itri

ube,

e

Three Drams of Sal Armoniac may be mixed with this. of Mulfum, or Honey boiled with Water, and given at many draughts in a day.

As foon as the Afthmatic awakes, they ought to rife out of their Beds, though in the Night, which fhortens the Fit, makes the ftraitnefs lefs, and by fitting up they breath better ; the next day, if the Room be not large, they must remove into an airy Place, where they may fit in an eafy Chair all day without any motion, for that increases the ftraitnefs.

During the Fit the Affmatic ought not to eat any thing, the first day of it, but Small Beer, and Toast and Butter, or Mead, or Wine and Water with a Toast, and this may be taken at Noon, but nothing in the Morning till then, but the coolest Juleps, and Salts; and the same again at Night, or elfe an Egg or two, with Vinegar in good quantity.

If the Fits continue violently for two or three Days, continue the fame Diet; for the thinner and fmaller the Diet is, the lefs Chyle is bred to ftop on the Lungs, and the fooner the Phlegm will diget and come up. L 2 Up-

# (148)

thi

55 th

Be

COI

01

Br

0:

M

ma

SYE St. A

Ho

100

5

ce

ta

ven bur dri

Upon occafion of Faintnefs, I take a Glafs of Sack and a Toaft, but that occafions a greater Inflation, and ftraitnefs; A potched Egg or two at Dinner time, with a great quantity of Vinegar, is good Diet, but all Flefh-meats are very injurious in the Fit, and therefore touch none of it, for the firft or fecond Day, till the Phlegm begins to expectorate : And that I may deter all Perfons from Flefh-meats in the Fits, I must tell them, that by eating thereof many have been fuffocated, and that caufes the Fits to last four or five Days longer.

No Pectorals but Oil and Sugar do any fervice in the Fit, but that I use the fecond Day, to help the flipping up of the Phlegm, and I fometime use a Pectoral Ptyfan of Figs and Liquorifh made very thin in the Summer, and in the Winter time only common Oil and Sugar, to relax the straitness, and lubricate the Trachea, and I frequently Butter the Toast and dip it in Small Beer. I take all Medicines cold, for no hot Liquors agree with the Afthmatic; the Fire offends, if very hot; the Bed increases the straitness; fo much are the Spirits of the Affhmatic diffurbed by every hot qu amos bus thing,

# (149)

thing, that warm Beer, or hot Watergruel is very injurious, and encreafes the ftraitnefs.

I always order the Affhmatic to go to Bed the fecond Night, though the Fit continues, having first taken his Opiate, or fome of this Linctus to compose his Breathing.

R

1e at

ts it- id, ve

do

up

inh inh inh

lundy

eer. Li-

ire

afes

hot hot

ing,

Be Ol. Amygd. Dulc. Diacod. ad 3 ifs. Oxymel. Scyllitici 3 fs. Sacch. Cand. 3 ii. Misce cap. Coch. semel bis velter repetatur.

The next Day as the Fit goes off, he may take a Spoonful of this Afthmatic Syrup Morning and Night; B. Syr. de Eryfimo, Prassio, Balfamic A. Zii. Oxymel. Scyllitici & aq. Bryon Composit. A. Zi. Balf. de Peru 31s. signetur the Afthmatic Syrup.

Since the Fit of the Afthma begins three Hours after Meat, a Clyfter in the Afternoon is very convenient, before the Fit grows worfe, and then Vomit alfo if neceffary, and eat little or no Supper, but take an Opiate.

I have tried Vomiting, Purging, Sweating over Night, and the Cortex to prevent the Fit I apprehended was coming, but all in vain, for the Fit was frequently worfe for it; but I find most benefit by drinking of Toast and Water very plen-L 3 tifully,

#### (150)

tifully, and adding fome Niter and Sal Armoniac to it; and at Bed-time I take 3ii. of *Galen*'s bitter Acid, which generally puts by the Fit.

I think I may appeal to the Cure of the Afthma Fit, to juftify my Notion of it, that a Fit of the Afthma depends on an Ephemera, becaufe whatfoever compofes the inflamed, rarefied, or expanded Spirits in an Ephemera, as cool Liquors, Clyfters, Opiates, acid Medicines, Quiet and Abstinence, that only agrees with the Afthmatic in the Fit, and all external Accidents that occasion the Ephemera, produce the Afthma, and those must be removed in both.

Sr th Fi bu

m

The feverifh Ferment in the Afthma is very volatile, and perfpires infenfibly, as it does in the Ephemera, without much Sweat, the most part goes off in Urine, or loofe Stools, and the feverifh Sediment in the Water appears but for one Night or two after the Fit.

The Air of the Room must be kept cool in the Fit, because that has most weight to open the obstructed Lungs.

All Fumes and Smells must be avoided, because they offend the Spirits of the Althmatic, by rarefying them : A Fire of

#### (151)

of Wood is more fuffocating than that of Coals, by the Fumes which fmell and difperfe more in a Room. The fmell of Charcoal is most Suffocating. The Air of a City, by the plenty of Fires and Smoak is more hot and rarefied than that of the Country, which makes the Fits worfe there; the Air of a Square has but little vent, and the Smoak stands more in them like Water in a Pool; but those Streets which are flort, and that part of it where four Streets meet, have a more conftant motion of Air, and therefore are more fit for Afthmatics, and efpecially that part of the City which stands highest is best: In the Air of a City the vifcid Spit is tinged black with Smoak, which gives a blackish Spit every Morning, and may irritate the Fit.

The Breaft of the Afthmatic ought to be kept cool in the Fit, and not anointed with Oils that have any fmell, becaufe that offends much.

1S

as h

IN

OT

101

IT

d.

he

re

of

All ftrait Cloaths, and the weight of Blankets hinder the Extention of the Breath, and raifing the Shoulders for Infpiration; and the Afthmatics in Bed utually lie high, leave their Breaft uncovered, and put one Arm out of Bed, L 4 leaning

## (152)

leaning the Hand upon the Thigh, that the Shoulder may be raifed high in Infpiration; and the Belly muft not be compreffed by any thing, that it may give way readily to the motion of the Diaphragme; any Plaifter on the Breaft hinders Refpiration.

Frictions of any Roots give great difturbance by promoting the Circulation of Humors.

I

th

t

ex

lag

Ta:

81

The Medicines of Caftor, Saffron, and Musk feem most proper in fainting Fits, and in them I also use volatil Salts.

Zecchius recommends Saffron 10 grains, Musk gr. i. in a draught of Aromatic Wine in extream Fits.

When the Afthma continues for fome Months, it is a true Pulmonic Afthma, and depends on fome Difeafe in the Breaft, as Dropfie, Tubercule, Abfcefs, which comprefs the Bronchia, and till that evident caufe be removed, 'tis impoffible to Cure the Afthma Fits ; for removing this Compreffion, Vomiting, Purging, Bleeding, and the ftrong Cleanfing Pectorals are ufeful ; but if that cannot be effected, 'tis beft to palliate thefe Cafes by cool methods, as cool Liquors, Acids, and Opiates, and a very fpare Diet, and an

# (153)

an open Air, which will not irritate any Cough, by the fmoakinefs of it; this Method prevents Inflammation, Inflations of the Membranes, and the increase of any straitnefs.

This useful Observation the Antient Physicians have left us, that Acids prevent all Imposthumations, and Inflammations; and for this end in the Pneumonic incurable Afthma, 'tis very useful to use the Vinegar Acids, to palliate it, and to abate the Suffocations which depend on the Paroxysms, which happen in the Night in continued Afthma's, as well as those which are Periodical.

I have obferved very little Spit in fome of thefe continued Pulmonic Atthma's, except a fmall quantity of a flimy Mucilage, though the Difeafe had lafted fome Years; and that no Balfams, as that of Sulphur with Turpentine did them any fervice. Thefe Afthmatics breath thicker and fhorter than those in the Periodic Afthma, who breath flowly and very rarely.

Hippocrates observed in Agiss, that she was nonvourdual before her Tuberculum ripened, and broke, and Asthmatic afterwards,

e

es

is, it

1

## (154)

I shall next defcribe that Method whereby the Return of the Asthma Fit may best be prevented, which is to be performed,

If. By Evacuating the flatulent and windy Cacochymia.

2dly. By correcting of it by Digeftives. 3dly. By preventing any Effervescence in our Humours, or Rarefactions of Spirits.

4. The Obstructions of the Glands in the Lungs must be removed, if any be, and the Glands of the Brain constringed or reduced to a better tone.

If all these Intentions can be performed, we may prevent the breeding of any more Cacochymia, which when it is in any great plenty, produces a Periodic Effervescence.

First, the viscid Lympha must be eva-

1. By a gentle Vomit both from the Stomach and Lungs; fuch is a Vomit with Carduus, or Radifh-feeds boiled in Water, to which Oil and Oxymel Scylliticum, of each an ounce or two, may be added, and this Vomit may be repeated once in a Month in old Afthmatics, when the Fits return once in ten Days, or thereabouts;

## (155)

abouts; and in others where the Fits are Anniverfary, once or twice in a Year, or quarterly; for there is always a Phlegmatic Saburra in the Lungs, and effecially in the Stomach of the Afthmatic.

To ftrong Bodies an Infusion of Crocus Metallorum, from 3fs. to 3i. are convenient, or rather fome of the Oxyfacchara; but Sal Vitrioli is observed by *Bartholet*, to be injurious to Diseafes of the Lungs by its Stypticity: He gives it in Oils.

All Afthmatics ought to Vomit frequently, but it is to be managed warily, becaufe of their aptnefs to Fits of the Mother in Hyfterical Afthmas by ftrong Vomits; and I have obferved a Fit of the Afthma to have been occafion'd by them. I have given  $\exists i$ . of Acetum Scylliticum to Afthmatics to Vomit them, tho' they had formerly fpit Blood, and that without any Injury.

Without Vomiting fometimes no Afthmatic can be throughly relieved, and at Night after the Vomit, give an Opiate, to quiet the Diforder of Spirits.

2. Clyfters once in a Week are much commended by fome Perfons, who have tried them with good fuccefs, to prevent the Fit.

3. By

# (156)

3. By Purging once, or twice, or three times after the Vomiting, or once in fourteen days, if it be an Afthma returning in that time.

Pills of Ammoniacum, Hiera cum Agarico, de Succino, Ruffi, are the best Purgers either single or mixt Jii. at Night. Pil. Coch. cum Castoreo, these are proper in cold Constitutions, in whom Hiera Picra may do well; but in the hot I only use Purging Salt 3i. in White Wine Posset Drink, or the Purging Waters boiled very much: This Purge raises no Effervescencies in the Humours, which generally occasions an Afthma Fit.

After ordinary Purges, Decoct. Sena, or the bitter Purging Decoction with Buckthorn agrees with others; a Diet Drink of Sena and Monk's Rhubarb agree with fome; but Sena ferments, becaufe 'tis a Legumen, and that raifes windinefs injurious to the Afthma.

The Decoction of a Cock in Broth, with Sena, and Pectorals, is much commended by many Authors.

Purging oft occasions Fits, by raising an Effervescence in the Humours, and therefore an Opiate is necessary after them, and sometimes the Cortex too, to prevent the

#### (157)

the feverifh Returns, which happen after Purging, like those in the Ague.

The Old Authors Purged with Elaterium, and Troches Alhandall; thefe may be proper in the Hydropical Cafes, where watery Tumors are in the Limbs, as Pil. de Cambogia, but in the hot thin Tempers they are certainly mifchievous, for the Serum is deficient in thefe, but Superabundant in the Hydropical; and where that overflows, Purging is abfolutely neceffary, and injurious if deficient.

Atius Purges with Savin Powder, the first day 3i. the next day 3ii. the third 3iii. the fourth 3s. and this brings away Blood. 'Tis Atius's faying, Maximum est remedium purgatio fortior, per Pharmaca fortiora. I find that ordinary Asthmatics are very fainty, languid, and hot after Purging, and they generally say Purging does them no good.

But it was Bellonius's advife, In difficultate spirandi non est formidanda frequens & magna purgatio. I remember an Asthmatic who took some Quack Pills, by which he had 20 or 30 Stools, this very much relieved him, because he was subject to the Dropsy; so that strong Purgers in gross, fat, hydropical Persons may be

# (158)

be proper, but not in the contrary Constitutions. Thus Dr. Waller prefcribes; Be Pil. de Hiera cum agarico 9i: Troch. Alkand. gr. ii. Gum Ammoniacum 9fs. f. Pil.

4. Iffues diminish the quantity of the Serum, but I never found any benefit by them, though made between the Shoulders, and on the Arms, nor found any injury by stopping of them up.

I never tried any on the Breaft, nor top of the Head, but cannot approve of either; nor those in the Back, because they require a Ligature which straitens the Breast.

5. Sudorifics are commended for Catarrhs, as the Decoction of Guaicum, China, Sarfa, and therefore may be ufeful where the Afthma happens after a Catarrh; and in the fame cafe Venice Treacle may be given every Night, which by its bitter and acrid Tafte helps the Digeftion, and promotes the Circulation of the Serum through the Lymphatics, and opens the ftop'd Perfpiration, and by its opiate Faculty it allays the Inflations of the Spitits; but we ought to take care that it be not too hot for the Confumption, and in fuch cafes muft be mixt with Acetam Theriacale, or its Extract.

6. Diu-

## (159)

6. Diuretics, as Millepedes, in the great quantity of Serum of the Blood are very useful, but the Afthmatic seems to make too much Water sometimes.

The common Diuretics are Woodlice, Saffafrafs, Pine-tops, Gill, Horehound, Enula Campana, Orris, Radifh-roots, Juniper-berries.

I have used Gilead Balfams, and Balfam of Tolu diffolved in Syrup of Balfam, and Balfam Sulphur, Anifat, without any advantage; but these ought to be used in a Diuretic Oxymel to temper their Heat.

Secondly, The mucilaginous and flatulent Cacochymia must be corrected,

1. By diluting and cooling the vifcid Humors, for which end we muft drink much of Mead, and Milk-water, Sack and Water, Decoctions of Sarfa and China. Thofe Afthmatics whofe Blood wants Serum, may bear Chalybeat Waters, but in thofe who have old habituated Afthma's, the Serum is too abundant, and in them the Chalybeat Waters affect the Nerves, and fill the Veffels with too much Serum ; and in fome they coagulate the Serum, and give Rheumatic Pains. Affes Milk, and common Milk, make the Lymphas

phas too vifcid, and they cannot agree with the Afthmatics: Though I know an Afthmatic, who commends Milk and Water, for allaying the Inflations at the beginning of a Fit. Drinking of Water agrees with the Young Afthmatic, but the old habituated Affhmatic must use it moderately, for fear of a Dropfie, and Pains of the Stomach and Spleen, of which I have heard old Perfons complain who drink Water much; but I have observed that a Perfon who drank no Malt Liquor, but only Toast and Water, and rarely a Glass of Wine, lived free from the Afthma, which certainly returned if he changed his Liquor.

B

ftr

g

en

W

10

Cet

Br

for

Per

thin

Dr

The drinking Bath Waters is much commended for the Afthma, but the going into the Bath rarefies the Blood and Spirits, breeds more vifcid Humors, and is very injurious to all Afthmatics, as all Authors affirm, and I find observed in Crato's Concilia.

I difcourfed an Afthmatic at Bath, who was extreamly troubled with a violent motion to Vomit in the beginning of each Fit, and nothing composed that like drinking Water; This Perfon affured me, that he received much benefit by drinking

2-12/32

#### ( 161 )

ing Bath Water, which cured him for fome Years, but the Afthma returning, he came then to Bath a fecond time: He was of a full Habit of Body, and drank the Waters, but durft not adventure to Bathe.

36

W

nd

k

er

此・北

nd

ch

10

ed

or,

2

1.

1-

ch

o-

nd

11

11

10

T.

h

KC

12,

k.

150

I drank the Bath Waters, whole heat feemed very difagreeable to me, fince no actual hot Liquor can well agree with me, but I liked thefe Waters beft when I drank them no hotter than new Milk: They paffed well, but I found no benefit by 'em. I went twice for trial into the Crofs Bath, and that each time made my Breath ftrait, and Spirits and Stomach very languid, by which I learn'd the inconvenience of bathing in the Afthma.

I met with other Afthmatics at Bath, who found benefit by drinking, but durst not bathe.

I know the Hypochondriacal have received fome Relief of their Pains on the Breaft by Purging and Bathing, but none for the Afthma, as I could obferve in a Perfon who was both Hypochondriacal and Afthmatic, neither drinking nor bathing did him any fervice,

Thin Bodies can neither bear the heat, nor Purging of the Bath Waters; and all M Sul-

# ( 162 )

Sulphur Medicines are difagreeable to Affhmatics, the Tubercula in the Lungs, Impostumate by bathing ; the Heat and Serofity of the Water, does more injury to fuch Conftitutions, than the cleanfing quality of the Niter or Sulphur can compenfate : And I have heard an Ingenious Affhmatic complain, that her Affhma never was fevere till fhe had drunk the Bath Waters.

The opening the Pores, and rarefying the Humors, make the Afflumatics more fubject to every nice Change of Air, than they were before ; the drinking the Watersgives a ftrange Opprefion and Stupor to the Spirits, with Sleepinefs, and that must confequently affect the Nerves ferving Refpiration, and make them more open for receiving of flatulent Spirits. I do in fhort think the Bath Waters most agreeable to fat and cool Constitutions, who can well bear their Heat and Sulphur, and their cleaning Qualities. I remember they funk the Habit of the Body too much in very lean dry Bodies.

di

T

DU

W

E

25

th

61

be

the

the

2. We must avoid all occasions which make the Chyle viscid or windy, such is Milk, Cheefe, Fish, Gelly Broths, strong Wines of a thick consistence, Malt-drink, baked

# ( 163 )

baked Pies, and Cakes, and Puddings, all Flower Meats unfermented; for all thefe breed vifcid Humors.

All crudeflimy flatulent Meats are to be avoided, as Herbs, Sallads, Mushrooms, Peas, Beans.

The moft fimple Diet is of Flefh-meat boiled or roafted, once in a day, with good Bread well fermented and well baked, and the Bran not too much dreffed out; the Drink may be Toaft and Water, for all young Afthmatics; Wine and Water for the declining Age, and good finall Beer or Ale not bottled; and no Malt Liquor ought to be ufed but at Dinner by those who cannot leave it off.

Extream cold Air increases the viscidity, and is to be avoided by living in a Town; gentle Riding and Walking attenuate Humors, and difcuss Flatulencies, which arife from ill Digestion; violent Exercise makes our Humors more viscid, as we observe in labouring People, and their Horses, whose Blood is made feizie by constant Sweating, by which the Blood becomes inspissed like Serum heated by the Fire.

·2-

h

is

昭,

d

Too many Clothes heat and thicken the Blood, by evacuating the Serum, and M 2 this

#### (164)

this Practice makes them more fubject to take Cold; for the more the Humors are rarefied, the quicker does the Air compress them, or rarefie them upon the alteration of Weather; they therefore catch least Cold whofe Spirits and Humors have the Air most compressed in them.

Sadness ftops the motion of Humors, and makes them more vifcid. 'Tis obferved that all Afthmatics being angry or fad, do fall into Fits oftner than when they are chearful.

The Belly must be preferv'd fluid, the Urine must flow in due quantity, and the Sweat must be moderately promoted by Exercise; for all these ways the viscid Humors may be evacuated, and the windy Spirits discussed. IS SCI OD ES !

3. We must correct the mucilaginous quality of the Chyle and Lymphas by Digeftives. rollogically mort day douby

T

ha

# bistiv stom zione Bitters.

I have long used bitter Wines, but those inflame the Blood and Spirits.

Dr. Lowers's bitter Tincture with Steel did me no service, but great injury. I have heard fome Cachectical Perfons commend EVI 2

Kate 2

# (165)

I have used many Ounces of Elixir Proprietatis prepared with volatile Salts, and Hiera Picra infused in Sack, without any benefit, and that prepared with fixed. Salt is as mischievous to the Afthmatic; but Elixir Proprietatis prepared with an Acid is less heating, and a truer digestive, and more convenient for Afthmatics against their Cachexies.

I have used great quantity of Horehound in vain, as this. to fix Gallons of very finall Table-beer, it produces much Urine, and was pleasant enough, though a very firong Bitter, of the tatte, nature, and quality of the Verbascum, to which class I therefore think it referrible; but a long use of this did me no fervice. But I very much relieved a Cachectical Afthma, by a long use of Syrup of Horehound in Hyslop-water, which was taken Morning and Night for three Months.

N

U

y

US

品

eel

11-

nd

bean in Thea for my Breakfast, Idrank half a pint of this with or without Sugar all Winter every Morning; this agreed with my Stomach, as Centaury Thea did, which I alfo have frequently used with Viimsup M 3 Sugar;

### ( 166 )

Sugar; both these Theas agreed in Colour, Taste, and Virtue, for which reason I call Buckbean a Marsh Centaury.

I tried the bitter of Broom, putting of green Broom Bfs. to fix Galons in a Bag; this agreed with my Stomach, and helped my Appetite, though it did the Afthma no good. I have known it to produce much Water in the CacheEtical, and help the Hydropical Afthmatics: Neither boil the Broom nor dry it, for then it has a nafty fmoaky leguminous Tafte; ufe equal quantity with Hops.

Since Oxymels with bitter acid Cephalics, and Pectorals, are generally commended by Authors, I thence learned, that a bitter Acid was ufeful to Afthmatics, and I obferved that they ufually prefcribed their bitter Gums, and acrid Medicines to be diffolved in Oxymels, or drank with a Pofca.

I wasfrequently reliev'd by the following Oxymel, and my Fits kept off many Months; I uled the Prefcriptions of Authors in vain, wherein they order the folution of Gum Ammoniacum, becaute they failed me in not prefcribing a fufficient quantity of Gum Ammoniacum, as Phyficians formerly did err in the fmall quantity

# (167)

quantity of the Cortex : This diffolution feems to me convenient, and I use it till I have spent three Ounces of the Gum.

Be rad Zedariæ Zi. Coq. in aqu. Font. tbii. ad tbifs. Colaturæ adde aceti Ziv. in quibus diffolvatur Ammoniaci Zi. Colaturæ adde Mellis Ziv. Coq. & difpumatur, & coletur. Capiat colatur. Cochl. 3. Mane & Vesperi per menses aliquot.

There is a very volatile Acrimony in Ammoniacum, which affects the Roof of the Mouth, besides the Bitterness, by which it fenfibly opens the Paffages of the Lungs, and inlarges the Breath; it helps the Digestion, and discusses Winds, it produces gentle Sweats, and fenfibly invigorates the Nerves; but I found it neceffary to follow the Antients method, in correcting its bitternefs and acrimony by Vinegar, and that makes it more cool; but sometimes I used it thus, B Rad. Emul. candit. 31. Coq. in ag. Ibii. in Colatura calida; Dissolvatur Ammoniaci 31. 6 Mellis Biv. This was without Vinegar; The Ammoniacum is best diffolved by Water, but it is no ways difagreeable to the Afthmatic, till Vinegar is added to abate the heat of its great acrimony and the bitternefs, and by the Experience I had M 4 toof.

1.

......

### ( 168 )

of this Medicine I learned, that no acrid nor bitter would agree with the Afthmatic, unlefs they were corrected in their heat by an Acid; I therefore ufually added Vinegar of Squills Ziii. to the former Prefcription.

Diofcoric'es commends Aristolochia decocted in Water. I have used that and Gentian, of each Zi. infused in thi. of Vinegar; 'tis not disagreeable. Briony and Centaury are commended by the Antients for the Asthma.

All Acrids are forbid by Galen in the Dyfpnæa, becaufe they rarefy the Humors, and diffipate the thinner part, by which Humors are made more thick. If Acrids be ufed, they must be used in small quantity, and well diluted by Liquids, or rather corrected by Acids.

I like the drinking of Mum in an Evening, half, or a whole Pint, for that helps Digeftion, and keeps the Body open, both which are useful to the Afthmatic; thin Constitutions may use this all Winter for Supper with Dutch Bisket, and it will feed them.

The Theriaca Diateffaron is a good, old and ufeful Medicine, if taken at a Night, and fome Oxymel after it, to cool its heat. The

300 10

# (169)

The bitter Decoction may be used for a Month every Morning, to help Digeftion, with some drops of the Elixir Paracelfi in it.

Centaury, Gentian, or Carduus, may be used in all our small Beers, 3i. to each Gallon; or else Broom, Horehound, or Pinetops, Germander, Woodsage, or Gill tbs. in four Gallons for ordinary Drink; or use Thea of Centaury, Gentian, Buckbean.

# Secondly, By Salfoacid Digeftives.

Some Afthmatics have drank their own Urine every Morning, and found much advantage by it, which gave me a hint of ufing Sal Armoniac Preparations.

NY II

all

is,

1-

ps

in

for

I

old

ht,

in

he

The Acid Spirit of Sal Armoniac diftilled from that and Sugar, and made into a Tincture; add ziii. to thi. of a Tincture of Cordial Flowers, 'tis ufeful if given in Water, to a fpoonful, or two, or three, in the Cholic, and Fits of the Mother; and the Flowers of that Salt, which are rarefied from the common Salt, are given in intermitting Fevers; or elfe the common Salt of Sal Armoniac may be given as a Digettive, or the volatile Salt fixed

### (170)

fixed with Spirit of Vitriol gr. vii. Sal Succini is a Salfoacid Volatile, I used fome Drams of it without any benefit.

Aqua Calcis compound feems proper to correct the Phlegm, and cure the Diabetes attending all Afthmas, and to raife the Digeftion; I tried it, but it heated the Blood extreamly, dried the Mouth by its ftypticity and faltnefs, and made the following Fits worfe, neither would agree with any other to whom I recommended it.

Three Drams of common Sal Armoniac is prescribed in 3i, Cyathis of Aqua Mulfa by the old Writers.

Thus also they used Sal Armoniac in their Diet; Take Sal Arm. Hi. Pepper, common Salt, ad Ziii. Seeds of Rocket, Ammeos, ad Zii. Hyssop, Thyme, ad Mii. Smallage, and Parsley-seeds, of each Zii. Origanum Zi. pound and sears them for a Powder; half a Spoonful may be used in Diet; and 'tis much commended for Windiness and Diseases of Breatt and Eyes.

If the Niter of the Antients was Urinous, we have nothing fo like it as Sal Armoniac, but they preferibe them and deferibe them as different Medicines in the Y.N

he

B

# (171)

the Afthma, but they used them both in it, for their cooling and attenuating Qualities.

I have obferved the Merchants to try the Salt Petre before they buy it, by throwing it into the Fire, to fee whether it will crack, for then they reject it as full of common Salt. I think the beft fubftitute of the Aphronitum may be Sal Prunel, and a volatile Salt, for they will have a lixivial Tafte, and ferment with an Acid, and Nitrum regeneratum, and tart nitrated is of a like tafte and quality. All volatile Salt exposed to the Air, has a cool tafte like Niter, and may be mixed with Spirit of Niter.

#### Thirdly, By Chalybeat, or Vitriolic, and Sulphurous Digestives.

Extractum Ecphracticum cum Aloe, feems the beft digeftive for Afthmatics, for tho? the Steel by its ftypticity ftops the breath, yet Aloes helps the Steel off the Stomach. Moft Afthmatics complain that Steel heats them, ftops their Stomachs, and Breaths, and thickens the Phlegm, and at laft produces a fevere Effervescence which gives the Fit.

Baccius

### (172)

Baccius affures us, that Steel-waters by their flypticity offend the Afthmatic, in them they occafion Rheums and Catarrhs and fill them full of Serum; the Steel affects the Head with a drowfinefs and giddinefs, as all Steel Wines do: Thofe I have recommended to the Steel Waters have much complained of them; and the German Spaw-waters did increase my Fits; but I will confess I have difcourfed fome Perfons, who have been much better for thofe Waters, the quantity of cool Water doing more fervice than the Steel could do injury.

I believe Vitriolum Martis inconvenient, becaufe of its great flypticity; though it raifes no Effervescence in the Blood, yet whatever gives a violent motion to the Humors produces the Afthma. All Steel Wines are mischievous, as well as all other Medicines infused in Wine. Lower's Infusion of Steel and bitter, swelled my Stomach, that I could not bear it, because of the strong Waters in it.

th

F

te

PI

Cet

m

ati

a hot Flatulency, and that of the Blood an Ephemera Fever; both these ought to be flopt, and the occasions avoided, as Surfeits, much Drinking, floppage of the Pores,

# (173)

Pores, violent Motions, Paffions, Study, all these Causes rarefy the Air included in the Bubbles, which constitute the fluids in Animals, and thereby produce Flatulencies, Effervescencies, Heat, and Expanfion of Spirits. pound them?

fs

1.

15

10

y

t.

el

it, it

he

eel

er

n-

to-

ufe

1

d

to

25

te

ES,

For the suppression of all Effervescencies in our Humors, the Method preferibed in the Cure of Ephemeras, and the Afthma, must be used, but for preventing it nothing more likely than the use of the Cortex. Take 3i. of it after your quarterly Vomits and Purges; I boil it in Pectoral Drinks, for in substance the stypticity of it oppresses the Stomach, and makes a greater straitness than usual.

Though the Cortex cannot prevent the Fits in a Pneumonic Afthma depending on a great Tuberculum, nor in the flatulent Afthma, where there is a great Cacochymia, yet I perceive it greatly relieves the Sweats and Faintness attending the Fits, and Head-achs, and makes the Intervals of the Fits longer, but it is no ways proper to give it in a Fit, for then it exceedingly huffs up the Stomach. Howin

It feems to me a rational defign, to try more Antifebriles against the Asthma, after general Evacuations and Digestives Ri

are

# (174)

are tried, of which kind this feems proper in the Summer time, and it is commended by *Rulandus* as very good in the Afthma.

Take 20 or 30 Leaves of Houfeleek, pound them, and express the Juice, putting to them first a little Water, and two drams of Sal Armoniac: This Houseleek and Salt are proper to prevent Effervescies in the Blood, for which reason also we may try Ribwort, Plantain; for Plantain is used against intermitting Fevers: Boil *Mij*. in Posset-drink one Pint.

I drank the Water diffilled from the Juice of Houseleek this. with 3ii. of Sal Armoniac in a Sand Furnace; this cools well, but a Syrup would have been much better.

These are the best Febrifuges to be used in the Summer.

1

the

fa

01

dr

Ot

OF

0

W

1. Watery cool Liquors, diftilled Milk, Water drinking, 'Decoctions of Sarfa.

2. Acids, as the Tartar Acids and Acerbs, acrid Acids of Vinegar, Sulphur Acids, Salfoacid Spirits, vitriolic Acids, nitrous Acids.

3. Vitriolated Salts, or Salfoacids, Sal Armoniac, Niter, Sal Prunel, Sal Succini.

# (175)

In the Winter Bitters are the beft Febrifuges, as Venice Treacle, bitter Decoction, Oxymel Scilliticum, and the Acetum, Elixir Proprietatis, with an Acid.

d.

R

í,

1

vo ak fo

ns:

el

ols

h

be

K,

A-

W

s,

al

C.

n

The watery Toast and Water for ordinary Drink, or else this in a Morning, after Dinner these and as much at Night. Maxima continentium febrium remedia, hac duo funt, venesetio & frigida potio.

The old Practifers gave as much cold Water to drink, as the Patient could bear, ibili. or iv. and they affirm, *Ipfius febris* qua febris aqua frigida est remedium. I am very well affured, that if an Afthmatic could drink no fermented Liquor, he would rarely have the Afthma Fits. I usually drank ibi. of Water heated with a Toaft in the beginning of my Fits.

The Decoction of the Woods is very ufeful Morning and Night.

Take Liquorifh bruifed 3i. fteep it in fair Water all Night (about fbii.) without heat, and drink every Morning a large draught, or elfe ufe it for ordinary Drink; others must ufe a fifth or fixth part of Sack or White Wine, with a large proportion of Water; others may ufe Waters boiled with Cinnamon, or Anifeed, and Raifins. (176) I use this Hydromel, Take Honey thi. boil it in one Gallon and a half of Water to one Gallon, scum it well, then add to it Ginger 3 races, Cloves 30, boil it and strain it, then when 'tis cold bottle it, and use it Night and Morning with a Toast and Butter, or else for ordinary Drink.

Take boiling Water thii. Cinnamon 3ii. the crum of white Bread a good quantity, Sugar 3iii. fteep them, and put them through *Hippocrates* Sleeve.

'Tis usual to add an Acid to the Water, and then lefs Water will do; thus, Take Water Hi. Spirit of Vitriol Di.

This Water drinking is very agreeable to all Chronical Difeases, in which there is an Effervescence of Humors; as the Gout, from whence it is observed, Rarissimum exemplum ut quis Hydropota fiat Arthriticus. By Water drinking all Salt and other vitious Taftes of our Humors are diluted, and made more mild and lefs corrofive: Water drinking is proper for all Defluxions which depend on the Ephemera, as Head-achs, the Hyfterical, Falling Sickneis, Tremblings, dull Sight, the Melancholic, Bilious, Hemorragies, Putrifactions of the Mouth, Fluxes of Humors by Stool. Urine, the Womb, and is certainly

# (177)

tainly very useful for all the hot Cacochymias, as well as all very hot burning Fevers. I have oft put by my Fits, and cured the Inflation of the Stomach by the Hydropofia, for which reason I cannot but recommend this to other Persons.

0

d

11,

1

m

Ty j

e

e

R

10

1-

1

IS is

0ľ

2.

e

The next and most prevalent cooling Taste, is, of the Acid Febrifuges, which coagulate the consistence of Humors, gathers or compresses the Globuli of the Blood, and makes the Blood of a blacker colour; they cool the Spirits, and prevent their too great rarefactions: I will first confider the varieties of Acids, common Vegetables, and then those observable in Animals, and Minerals, and propose the best Forms of them that I could collect out of Authors, to be tried in the Afthma.

1. The ftyptic acerb Taftes, fuch is Plantain, Polygourd, fpotted Arefmart, Sorrel, the Seda; amongft thefe the Sedum Majus has been tried, and recommended in the Afthma by *Rulandus*, as I mentioned above. Dr. *Baynard* tells me a Relation of a Woman relieved in the Afthma by Sorrel, a Poffet-drink made with the Juices of the Seda, or Sorrel may be tried, or a Syrup made of the Juices, and diffolve it, an ounce of it in four ounces of N the

# (178)

the diffilled Water of the fame Plant, and use it with 3ss. of depurated Niter, or gr. 15. of Sal Armoniac. See the Serum de Sedo in Bates's Dispensatory.

The Virtue of these Acerbs is to cool Inflammations, Fevers, and astringe all Fluxes of Humours: Their Tartareous Acidity makes them cooling and diuretic, and their Stipticity makes them proper for intermitting Fevers, and in these Cases these acerb Acids must be used.

The most Physical Acerbity we obferve in the Fruits of Trees, as in Medlers, Services, Quinces, Granates, Rhue, Opfoniorum, Barberries, Grapes, Sloes, Bilberries, Cherries, Pears.

The most acerb Tastes are too styptic for the asthmatic ; but the fermented Acids are commended in the Asthma, as old Verjuice and Vineger.

m

to

g

an

佣

In

117

The acerb Taffe depends on the want of a due Fermentation in the Fruits, for in a farther and perfect Maturation, they become fweet and more acid, with a leis Aftringency: The crude acerb Juice of Grapes has no Acrimony, but Vineger having undergone, first, a vinous or perfective Fermentation, and after that, a fecond putrefactive Fermentation, it becomes

# (179)

comes fomething acid, and is properly an Acid acrid: From Fruits fermented by Nature a pure Acid is produced, fuch is that of ripe Fruits, and I call it,

2. The tartareous Acid; fuch is the Juice of Limons, Lime Juice; this may be called the fweet Acid; in these there is a Tartar too cool, but no Stypticity to bind; but these Acids purge most, and are used chiefly for Thirst and Fevers; but these ferment too much for the Afthma.

Take Conferve of Wood Sorrel, Hipps, Rob of Berberries; each 3i. Crem. Tart. 3iij. Syrup of Limons; mix them.

Drink Limonade, Limon Poffet-drink, or Verjuice Poffet-drink, Decoction of Pippins, fweetned with the Syrup of Limons, Citron, adding Spirit of dulcified Salt, Niter or Vitriol.

All Meats ought to be acidulated with Oranges, Limons, Sorrel, and the Drinks too, as Barly Water, 15ij. Juices of Oranges or Limons, Ziiii. Cinnamon Water, and Syrrup of Rasberries, of each Ziij. fweet dulcified Spirit of Niter, Dij.

See Tabula Tartarea, and Cicera Tartari in Bates, and Julapium Fragorum and Ideum, for proper Forms.

N 2

#### ( 180 )

Inftead of common Salt use Tartar poudered with all your Meats, or Cream of Tartar, 3ij. with Juice of Oranges, 3ij. may be diffolved in thii. of Barley Broth to loofen the Belly; one Spoon ful of crude Tartar may be used in Broth, to loofen in a Morning, or elfe Honey and Cream of Tarter mixed; take three Drams.

Pulvis hepaticus rubeus is made of Cream of Tartar irrorated with Spirit of Vitriol: It cools and prevents Drunkennefs.

Take Cream of Tartar irrorated with Spirit of Vitriol, Crabs-Eyes prepared with Vineger, of each 3i. Oyl of Cinnamon, Cloves, of each 3is. Sugar, tbfs. make a digettive Powder.

3. I will next confider the acid acrid, or Vineger Acids, and give the Forms.

H

to

V

The old Posca made of Vinegar 3i.Water this given 3vi. three or four times in a Day: "Tis good for the Cholera and Hemorrhages, and confequently for all other Effervescences: Rose Water, Vineger distilled, and Sugar, of each 3i.

Pliny commends Vineger Medicines as very ufeful, Vini Vitium transit in Remedia; it excites our Appetites, and recommends our Meats to our Palates : It may be mitigated with Water or a Toalt, Wine,

#### ( 181 )

Wine, Pepper, Salt makes it hotter; otherwife Vineger is of its felf of a cooling, and no lefs difcuffing Quality; it ferments with the Earth, and breaks Stones, which Fire cannot; by which we obferve that 'tis proper for Stones; if it be drank it takes off Naufeoufnefs, Hickops, and fneezing by fmelling to it : Vineger is ufeful in Eye Medicines, and in Gargarifins for the fcorburic Putrefaction of the Mouth.

Vineger is proper for diary Fevers, from Heat of the Sun, and for Thirst; and for these the Ancients used the Aceta Theriacalia.

Vineger was used by the Ancients for leprofe Scurfs, Ulcers, Bites of mad Dogs, or other venemous Stings; outwardly for Hemorrhages, 'tis applied with a Sponge, and two Cuatha may be taken inwardly to diffolve the Blood.

d,

1-

a

e-

di-

i.

n-

EY

II,

Vineger is applied to the Procidence of the Arms or Vulva; it helps the old Cough, Orthopnea, and Decays of the Teeth.

Agrippa had his Legs immerfed into hot Vineger in a cruel Fit of the Gout; by this it appears, and many other Prefcriptions, that Acids were used outwardly for

N

the

### ( 182 )

the Gout, and Crato used Oyl of Vitriol five Drops in Broth to prevent the Gout.

Theold Writers always used the Acid of Vineger and Niter to cool the Humours, and to abate the Heat, Acrimony, and Bitterness of strong Medicines: I will give Pliny Commendation of the Acetum Scyllicitum, which all the old Writers commend in the Althma.

The old Vineger of Squills is most approved of; it is profitable in the Acidity of Digestion, and to those who vomit fafting; it cures the Stench of the Mouth, Lungs, and Gums; confirms the Teeth, gives a healthfuller Colour to the Face, helps Deafness by gargarising, sharpens the Sight; 'tis proper for the Epilepfie, melancholic, vertiginous, hysterical, bruifed, infirm Nerves and Faults of the Kidneys: Thus the Ancients used their medicated Vinegers inftead of acid Spirits, and falfe acid chymical Salts, and they feem more natural to our Humours than the others : From the medicated Vinegers they order a Poffet-drink thus, take two Spoonfuls of Vineger, mix them with thi. of Milk, to make a Poffet-drink, and any specific Juice or Scurvy-grafs may be added. S Jan W The

### (183)

The Spirit of Vineger is not fo acid as the common Vineger, and lefs to be valued, but the Dose is 3ij. to 31s. in any Julap. Tincture of Steel with Spirit of Vineger, Tincture of Opium with Vineger, may be used in hot Cacochymias. Sylvius preferved himfelf from the Plague by Vineger, one Spoonful in the Morning. Vineger is good in Surfeits, Vomiting, Hickops ; and outwardly applied to the Stomach with Leaven and Mint. Vineger corrects Opium, if a Draught be taken after it : I think we want an Opiate extracted with Vineger and Canary for a Menstruum, or Vineger Spirit alone; this is more proper for the Afthma and Fevers, than the Brandy Spirits: The Fumes of Vineger excite the Lithargy, and those that faint by Diffipation of Spirits by bathing : Vineger hinders Imposthumes, and inwardly and outwardly is used for the Erisipelas; it is proper for the Scab, Impetigo, Burning, it is proper for the Gout, with Sulphur in Embrocations, it ftops Fluxes of Blood; the Vapour of Vineger cures the Noife in Ears and Deafness, and the fame Fume is good for the Dropfy: Vineger is commended for an old Cough, and Dyfpnea. Avicenna N 4

# (184)

Avicenna gives these Virtues of Vineger. I will not only commend Vineger with the Ancients, but also tell its Faults as they observed them.

Vineger is injurious to the Hypochondriacals, becaufe they too much abound with an acid acrid Humour, but for fome Difeafes of the Spleen, as Tumours, Inflammations, Galen commends it both outwardly and inwardly; Vineger ufually gripes the Hypochondrias.

20. it

20

P

25

21

b

Vineger does Injury to the Womb by stopping the Menstrua, which are produced by an Orgaímus, Effervescence, Ebullition, or Turgescence, which implies not only a quick Circulation of the Blood, but also an intestine or fermentative Motion before the Menstruum happen for two or three Days, which gives Pains in the Back and Loins, with a Laffitude, Pulfation and Heavinefs in the Limbs, Pain in the Head, Inflation in the Hypochondria, and I hope by these Symptoms I may fay that Women have then an Ephemera, which occasions the Flux of their Blood, which being rarified, ftimulates the circulating V effels for its Ex-- cretion : But Vineger, if mixed with Bitters or Hony, does not suppress the Men-Arvicemps ftrua,

# (185)

strua, but is proper to cool and cleanse the Womb.

4. Vineger produces Sterility, by repreffing the Flatulency of Spirits; and coagulating the Sperm, which it will do as it does coagulate Milk.

5. Vineger is injurious to the Nerves and Nervous Parts when obstructed in a Palsie, but no way in those Diseases which depend on the hot Cacochymias, as Deliriums, Phrenities, Epilepsies, Convulsions, Asthmas, Fevers.

6. Vineger corrodes the Parts ulcerated, as the Guts and Kidneys; it extenuates the Body, by evacuating the Succus Nutritius; it depresses the natural Fermentation of Humours, and breeds the Dropfy and Cachexy in cold Constitutions.

Vineger is made more acrid and acid by Diftillation from Niter, Salt, and Sal armoniac; or if 3fs. of Sal armoniac be added to diftilled Vineger; by this it will diffolve Stores and Metals.

The Ancients made purging Vineger with Sena or Agaric, and an Elixir Salutis may be made with the fame Ingredients as that in Bates's only; use Vineger for the Menstruum, or else Vineger with an equal Quantity of Spirit of Wine. Galen

#### ( 186 )

len prescribes Aloes to be diffolved in Vineger, or elfe Scammony, or 3i. to thi. Hiera Picra may be infused in it, as well as in Canary or Brandy; the Oxyfacchary, made by the Infusion of Crocus Metallorum in Vineger, are certainly more agreable and most innocent: I have observed stomachic Vinegers with Quinces or Mint, diuretic Vinegers with Juniper Berries, cordial Vinegers with Cloves, ftyptic Vinegers with Rofes, pectoral Vinegers with Squills, diuretic, antihydropical Vinegers with Elder Flowers, cephalic Vinegers with Rofmary Flowers, uterine Vinegers with Myrrh or Savine, Pennyroyal, Caftor, Affa-foetida; Vineger with Niter or Sal Armoniac for the Stone; Aromatics and Hony may be added to all the Vinegers, or Suger to make them more agreable : We prefcribe ziv. of Vineger with Pepper for Obelity every Morning, I have often doubled. Whether Ziv, of the Cortex might not be infused in thi. of Vineger, to the great Advantage of hot Patients, who cannot well bear the bitter: A ftyptic Vineger may be made with Sloes, 15 fs. in 15 ii. of Vineger, or elfe by the Infusion of Oak Bark; an alexipharmic Vineger is belt of Venice 1900

21

t

### ( 187 )

Venice Treacle, Myrrh; of each 3i. Saffron, Camphir; of each 3i. Vineger, toil. or prescribe thus, Syrrup de Scordio, Aqua Epidemica, 3io. Aceti Bezoardic, Dos. Cochl. i. ad iii.

For pectoral Cafes, B. Aceti Scyllitici, Syrrup. de Prassio, Aqua Brion, composit. cum 3iv. Dos. Cochl. i.

Infinite are the Prefcriptions I have met with in the Ancients, made of Vineger, with all Sorts of Specifics ; but I fhall referve them for a Treatife of fimple Medicines, digested under their several Taftes, but here defign to add more about the Use of Oxymels, which were the pectoral Acids of the Ancients, but I must not omit that Bellis Minor is an Acid acrid, and may be properly infused in Vineger ; the Chymilts use a Tincture of the Flowers with Spirit of Vitriol for the Afthma: Anagallis Flore Phaniceo may be infused in any Liquor for Fevers, being an acrid Acid, and fois Urfa Solis, in Aqua Theriacalis : All the Tythimals and Hellebores are corrected by Vineger, which fhews the Virtue of Vineger to correct vitious' Humours which are corrolive.

The most acid Oxymel hath the fourth Part of Vineger, in respect of the Hony, the

# ( 188 )

the most fweet, the eighth Part in viscous Humours the Acid is to be used, and in others the fweeter.

Take of any pectoral Decoction, 15iiij. Acetum Scylliticum, 15fs. Hony 15ij. boyl it and fcum it.

I have made Oxymel Scylliticum thus; R. Aceti & Mellis cum this. Aqua this. coque cum Scylla 31. & Macis, adde cum thi. & refervetur.

Theacid Spirit of Turpentine is the best Diuretic, and the Acid of Guaicum the best Acid diaphoretic amongst Vegetables.

I think not fit to multiply any farther Receipts from vegetable Acids, but will pafs to the Acids of Animals, where Butter-milk Poffet-drink is the chief, and Butter-milk diffilled with Sorrel or Limons; and thefe I may call the Tartar Acids in the Chyle of Animals.

The Salfo-Acids from Urin, or volatile Salts mixed with Acids, as Sal armoniac: Let the Patient drink fixOunces of his own Urine with Specifics : Take Niter and Sal armoniac, diffolve them in Vineger, and cryftallize them, or Sal Polychreft. fbi. Sal armoniac, Zi. diffolve and cryftallize them.

in relaxit of the Hony,

136

Take

0

### ( 189 )

LS

11

S;

A

le

S.

記聞

It-

nd .

ar

e

1C.

VA

d

T,

.

C

Take the volatile Salt of Sal armoniac or Harts-horn, fix it with either Spirit of Sulpher, Niter, Vitriol, or Salt, putting as much as will diffolve it, then filter and crystallize it, or evaporate it to be a factitious Sal armoniac.

Take Flowers of Sal armoniac, Grains xv. in Conferve of Hipps for a Month, or the acid Spirit of Sal armoniac, mixing 3iii. in a fbi. of the Tincture of Cordial Flowers, the Dofe one Spoonful in fair Water Night and Morning.

B. Flowers of Sal armoniac, Ji. Aque Angelice, Cardui, aa. Zifs. Syrup. Citri, Zfs. mix for a Sudorific.

B. Flowers of Sal Armoniac, Mortiat. i. take it in a Spoonful of Wormwood Wine in the Dropfy.

B. Take Sal Prunel. 3iij. Volatile Salt of Harts-horn, 3i. Flowers of Benjamin 3fs, mix them, Dose H. ad 3fs.

B. Juice of Houseleek, Hiv. Sal Armoniniac, 3ii. distil them, or else use them in a Syrup with Sugar for the Asthma.

Sal armoniac may be used for common Salt.

Amongst Minerals we have Sulphur Acids, which are to be used in Fevers.

Ol.

# (190)

Ol. Sulph. Ifs. ad Ji. in four Ounces of Purflane Water.

lil

D

01

tw

Gi

Be

He

St

2

he

and

the

INH

Vi

Inf

ner

Ma

ofa

Dro

W.

Gas. Sulph. one, two, or three Spoonfuls in a Glafs of Water, or any Julap or pectoral Ptyfan.

Take fpring Water, Hiii. Spirit of Sulphur, Liquorice, Coriander Seeds; of each 3 fs. boy! them in a Glafs Veffel: Briony Water, Hofs. Ol. Salph. 3 fs. Def. Cochl.

Take any Cordial or specific Water or Brandy ziv. Ol. Sulph. per Campanam cinnam aa. 3 fs. Digest them to a Tincture ; the Dose is thirty Drops in Beer.

Take any pectoral Syrup, #15. Ol. Sulph, 3i. the Dofe is one Spoonful.

All the Drink or Wine may be fulphurated; many heat their Drink with a fulphureous hot Coal, and light their Tobacco with a Match, and the Tobacco may be washed in fulphurated Water; the Water cleanses away much Filth, and the Sulphur Acid corrects the narcotic Quality of Tobacco.

2. The false acid Spirits, which are properly diuretic and stomachic.

### (191)

The fweet Spirit of Salt, twenty Drops in Beer.

Sal Gem. may be used as common Salt, or the Rock Salt found in Cheshire may be powdered and used as common Salt.

3. Vitriolic Acids, for the cooling the Blood, Oyl of Vitriol, or Spirit, fix Drops in Broth or Water, 3vin

Plantain Water, 3x. Spirit of Vitriol, 3fs. Ol. Vitriol. Grains four in Wine or Broth, twice in a Week : Crato gives it for the Gout, and he prefcribes thus; Syrup of Betony Ziij. Oyl of Vitriol, Grains nine. He first gives one, then two or three Spoonfuls to them fasting, and faysit helps a pituitous and moist Stomach, for it vehemently dries, deterges, and astringes, and excites the Appetite; but by its Use the arthritic are made Cachectical, and it injures dry Bodies.

The Tincture of Rofes, with Spirit of Vitriol is useful in Effervescences, Fevers, Inflammations; in which Cases the Mineral Acids are most useful.

Hartman used Oyl of Vitriol with Man's Grease externally, for an Atrophy of any Part.

Give volatile Spirit of Vitriol, twenty Drops in a cephalic Julap, for the Epilepfy. Elix-

### ((192)

Elixir Vitriol is useful for the Appetite, Ji. to 3i.

Mixtura Simplex Ji. to 3v. in Aqua Lactis is a Diaphoretic in Fevers.

Spirit of Vitriol is mixed by Chymifts, with Cream of Tartar, or Crystals of the Juice of Wood Sorrel.

PET

is

D

V

D

'n

N

fo

and

dy

Sty

Ver

CUI

bla

Wit

ton

ofth

tule

N1-

Take Hydromel, aromatized with Ginger Hofs. Cream Tartar Zij. or Tartar vitriolated Jij.

If Vitriolum Martis be convenient, give it with Oyly Pectorals thus;

Take Juice of Liq. or Balf. Lucutell. one Ounce, Tart. Vitriolate, and Vitriolis Martis, of each 3i. mix them with Oyl of fweet Almonds, or Syrup of Balfam: The Dofe is 3i. or 3fs. and drink the Antifcorbutic Milk Water after it.

This Method may agree with the Hypochondriac Afthmas, or elfe Extractum Ecphracticum, to an Ounce of which add Vitriolum Martis zi. makeit into Pills.

4. Nitrous Acids to cool in Fevers.

B. Aqua Cardui ibij. Rob. Ribi.aa. 3x. Sacchari 3ij. Nitri prep. 3ij. this cools.

Barly Water Hij. Niter 31s. Syrup of Violets 3iij. take it with Rhenish Wine.

#### (193)

Niter may be used instead of Salt, in Broth or with Meat.

te,

24

S, C

th

1-16

Ne

1.

1.

bb

Sal Polychrestum zi. take it in Water. B. Vitriolum Martis 31. Arcanum Duplic. Sal Prunell. aa. 3ij. Dofe Ji. in long Fevers.

Take Niter 3ii. Vineger thi. the Dofe is one Spoonful in great Effervescences.

The most powerful Cooler is made by Distillation of Spirit of Niter and Oyl of Vitriol.

Spirit of Niter is dulcified, and the Dole Ji two or three times in a Day, or in a pectoral Decoction, or elfe Spirit of Niter three Drops in a carminative Julap for Cholick and Flatulency.

Take Sal Prunella, Cream of Tartar, and Powder of Liquorice, and Sugar Candy, of each 31. Dofe 31.

Avicenna observes that Niter has no Stypticity, but cleanfes much, and is given in a Decoction of Rue and Dill: It cures Leannels, but a great Ule of it blackens the Choler.

Bartolet commends a factitious Niter with Spirit of Niter, and Oyl of Tartar to make the Diofpoliticum, which becaufe of the Niter is laxative, and good for 1'latulencies. and, the

Take

# (194)

Take Diaspoliticum 3i. Hony 3vi. Sal Armoniac 3s. mix them: The Ancients gave Diaspoliticum before or after Meats; it may be given in Broth.

If the Rue, Cummin, Pepper, and Niter be in equal Parts, it loofens the Belly; commonly the Niter is but half a Part.

I would make a *Diafpoliticum* thus: Powder of Cinnamon, Nutmegs, of each zii. Niter zi. Sugar Candy 3 ij. Mix them with Gum Dragon diffolved, Lozenges may be made, and 3 ii. of Flower of Brimftone added. Or thus:

Take Niter 3i. Sugar 3ii. Ol. Cinnam. or Nutmegs or Cloves 9s. the Dose two Dramsin Water.

Salts vitriolated, *Diagridium*, Grains three or four, Tartar vitriolated 3fs. take it in Wormwood Wine, for Dropfies to purge.

Take Tart. vitriol. Salt Prunell. Cream of Tart. aa. 31s. Sugar-Candy 3i. for twelve Dofes, take one Morning and Night.

Take Tartar, Vitriol, 3i. Rhenish Wine, thi. Decoction of Barley with Raisins Hi. Syrup of Violets and small Cinnamon Water, of each half a Pound, the Dose is 3iii. twice

### ( 195 )

twice in a Day ; 'tis a Digeftive and Febrifuge.

Hartman orders it thus.

h

M

es fi

1.

VO

Ins

fs.

p-

1.

新聞

ie,

EI.

Va-

ii.

ice

Tartar vitriolated 3i. diffolve it in a Pint of Wine of Squills; add to it two Pints of a Decoction of Raifins, Cinnamon 3fs. boyl them in three Pints of Water to thii. take a Draught thrice in a Day.

B. Tartar prepared with Niter 3i. Orange Pills 3fs. infuse them in a Pint of Parsly Water.

Take Sal Prunell. 3i. Spirit of Vitriol Grainsten, in a Decoction of Barly, and the Roots of Sorrel.

R. Sal Armoniac 3i, Niter 3fs. Borax 3fs. Flowers of Sulphur 9i. to the colliquated Niter in a Crucible add the reft.

reft. Arcanum Duplicatum Ji. in Broth: The Ancients used 3v. of common Salt to make Epythimum, purge and boyled them in Aqua Mulfa : Twelve Grains of Sal Succini may be given in a Julap, or the acid Spirit of Amber twelve Drops to thirty when an Acid is necessary for cephalic Cafes.

Acid Medicines, becaufe no Fit of the O 2 Afduna

# ( 196 )

Afthma can be cured or prevented without an Acid.

The Galenical Acids, for Flatulencies and Effervescencies, were Vineger and Niter; the chymical are the acid Spirits, and mixed Salts : But becaufe a long Ufeof Acids corrodes the Belly, foures Humours, dries the Succus Nutritius, Suppreffes the natural Rarefaction of Humours, and introduces a Cachexy inftead of the Effervescence, the Ancients wifely mixed their hot Medicines, as Acrids, Aromatics, and Bitters, with their acid Medicines, and the bitter helps the Digeftion of Humours, whilft the acid corrects their Effervescence, and both together keep the Body foluble, and drive out the Flatulencies.

Trallian boyls Marrubium in his Oxymel.

m

Ear

co

to

Oİ

All Authors agree, that the afthmatic Medicines ought to be inciding withour any vehement Heat, becaufe by Heat the Humours become more vifcid; therefore no hot Pectoral ought to be ufed, but in an Oxymel, nor no Sulphur without Niter, or acrid Gums without Vineger, according to ancient Practice : From whence I learnt Galen's bitter Acid,

# (197)

of which I take zij. or 31s. every Night when I fear a Fit, and drink Toalt and Water after it; this generally cures the Inflation at the Stomach, and puts off the Fit; At first it ought to be taken fourteen Nights together, but afterwards three Nights before and after the Change of the Moon, and upon Surfeits, and Changes of Weather, and ill Digeftion, and when the Inflation affects the Pit of the Stomach.

I will give fome Remarks out of Galen, to shew his Opinion, and Cure of the Afthma: He calls those afthmatic, who breath like one out of breath by running; and he observes they inspire too little, though their Breast is much dilated, because of a Straitness in their Lungs, caufed by an empyematic Humor, or by an Inflammation, or by vifcid Humors, or elfe a Tumor like an Abcefs: He cures the viscous Humours by Evacuations, and the Use of attenuating and deterging Medicines; and the vifcous Humors require much Drink to dilute and expectorate them : He observes that all Medicines for the Afthma, ought to attenuate without Heat, and for that purpose, Vineger and Oxymel of Squills are

# ( 198 )

are useful ; and fince all thick Humors are made more viscid, by too much Heat, he doubts of the Use of Millepedes, which attenuate and discuss much.

He observes those Medicines which cool too much; such as the Opiates, are injurious, by thickening the Humors; such are Poppy, Mandrake, Hemlock, Henbane, and Fleabane, Linseed, by their Mucilage.

He commends all Aftringents.

He commends moiftening, both in Diet and Medicine, for diluting thick Humors, and commends a thin Diet. 'Tis obfervable, that most of the hot Medicines he cites from *Archigenes*, are taken with Vineger, or Niter, or Oxymel, or Water ; of which I will give an Instance thus.

Take Seeds of Rue 3fs. Ariftolochia, Southernwood, Wormwood, Ammoniac, Sulphur, aa. 3fs. make Pills with Vineger, give two with 3iiij. of Oxymel.

He purged with Coloquintida, or Elaterium, and gave Niter or Salt in Aqua Mulsa after them.

From Andromachus he had this Medicine; take Squills, Sulphur, Bitumen; ad Dos. 3fs. cum Osymilite. He

## (199)

He mentions Eugenius, who mixt Opiates with Pectorals, for the Abscess; the hot Pectoral, as Myrrh, Sulphur, Bitumen, Gums, are recommended.

Avicen commends Niter with the Decoction of Hyflop, Oxymel with Iris and Pepper, and other Acrids, as Nettels, Leeks, Cabbage boyled in Vineger, and puts to his Ptyfans, of Hyflop, Thyme, Origanum, Niter inftead of Salt; and orders the Breaft to be covered with Oyl, Niter, and Salt, foaked with Wool; the Chapter of the Cure of the Afthma is loft unhappily.

Trallian approves of the mixing the hot Medicines with the cool, for vifcous Humors in thin Bodies and Fevers, and fays, that in fuch Cafes all the Phyficians ufed Muftard Seed, Niter, and Sulphur; but he treats not particularly of the Afthma.

Ægineta vomits with Raphanus, and commends Niter thus ; Verum in his qui suffocantur: B. Aphronitri 3iij. capiat in Aqua Mulsata cyathis tribus, aliquando cum Cardiamomo, facit & ad coxendium Morbum: Or B. Aphronitr. 3ix. Sulph. 3fs, Piperis 3i. dato cochl. cum Aqua calida. Take Mustard Seed 3i. Niter 3fs. Q 4 Elaterium

#### Elaterium Ifs. mix them and make eight Pastilli; the Dose is two; it vomits without Trouble.

( 200 )

Oribafins commends the Vineger of Squills, as well as all the former; he commends two Parts of Orris, with one of Niter, to rub the Breaft; and mentions many bitter and acrid Medicines.

W

pr

64

m

ot

G

0ľ

Ar

fee

W

W

CX

gr

fia

315

0A

ob

*Æsius* perfectly transcribes all the former Authors; he fays, in a crude *Tubereulum* there is neither great Weight, nor are they much asthmatic; but if it ripens, a Fever attends it, with putrid Spit afterwards.

He commends Wormwood, Orris, Caftor with Vineger; he uses Coloquintida with Acetum Scylliticum, and Elaterium with Niter.

Actuarius cures the Afthma as a Catarrh.

Cornelius Celfus has all the hot Pectorals, but that which I like is datur utiltter aut Nitrum, aut Nasturtium.

Nicolas Myrexsa has many Antidotes for the Afthma, but his Diospoliticum, in which there is Niter, is the beft.

Marcellus commends Acetum Scylliticum, and prefcribes Sulphur, Niter of each 3i. Abrotan. p. i. give two Spoonfuls, with hot Vineger, Aicen-

### ( 201 )

Avicenna observed the Paroxysms of the Afthma to be like those of the Epilepfy and Convulsion, and prescribes the Medicines for a Catarrh, strong Vomits and Purgers: He uses Medicines mixed with Acids, Cummin Seeds, or Nettle Seeds, and Squills with Vineger, and prescribes thus: Take Castor, Ammoniacum, Aristolochia rotunda, of each 3i. mix them with the Rob of Grapes, and give the Quantity of a Bean with Oxymel.

He commends Bitters, the Decoction of Centaury, or five Drams of Aristolochia rotanda every Day, in Water or Gentian constantly: He prescribes Arsnic or Sulphur, whose Fumes are acid. And Arsnic inwardly in Aqua Mellis; but all this feems hazardous, and 'tis better to use what he advises, attenuating Medicines, without any vehement Heat: He much extols Crocus, and a Decoction of Fanugreeck, with Figs and Hony.

He cautions much against Baths and flatulent things; he preferibes Aphonitri 3 is. Seed of Nausturtion 3 ij. in a Decoction of Hydromel.

Avicenna de Juvamentis Syrupi acetofi, observes, that it incides, subtiliates, and opens

#### ( 202 )

ci

et

VI

fux

cin

de

A

Er

日五元

Su

de

th

a

He P

長

opens without Heat, & hujusmodi via, est magni Juvamenti, multe Utilitatis, & Sufficientia in arte Medicina: This extinguifhes Fevers, and cools the Liver (that is, the Blood ) and incides grofs Humors, allays Thirst, in Inflammations; other acid Syrups have a Stypticity, as that of Apples, or too much Water, as the Syrup of Citrons; but the Syrup of Vineger cools Choler, and excites Appetite, incides Phlegm, and 'tis proper for the Afthma, and the Squill Vineger, he recommends in Epileplies, if made into a Syrup, and then it does not injure the Nerves, but this Syrup is inconvenient in Excoriations, and the Cholic, and Pain of the Womb, and Palfies, Tremors, in which it injures the Nerves, and the Melancholic' Influxes of Urine and the Spittle, and in Rheumatic Pains of the Back and Knees, and in the Cancer, and those who have a Sowerness at the Stomach; it hinders Coition and Fertility, and it introduces the Dropfy in those who are not of a hot Conftitution, and much Flefh. From these Observations we may learn the Benefit and Injury of all acid Medi-CIDESARATE J ARIENTAL FRANK SAME AND AND hard the set of the Conger site doand.

# (203)

Job. Anglus Prescribes the Lungs of a Fox, two Drams, in Aqua Mellis, and fays, it is Medicina Sublimis & experta in Afthmate. He recommends Ammoniacum in an Oxymel, or Nettle-feeds, boiled with Figs in Barley-water : He advises the Juice of Fenil with Milk, to fucking Children : He prescribes Medicines too hot, fuppoling the Afthma to depend on viscid Humours, and a Catarrh.

Horstins gives many Examples of the Afthma, and Cures them by Oxymel Cratonis, or Quercitan's Oxymel de Peto: He Purges the Hydropical with Pills of Hiera, with Agaric 3i. Diagr. gr. v. Oil Fenil, make Pills: He gives Balfam of Sulphur in a Diuretic Oxymel.

Sennertus thinks the Affhma does not depend on a Catarrh from the Head, but the Arteries, and that what is imputed to a Flatus ought to be attributed to a rarefied fermenting Serum; and he believes *Pifo*'s Opinion, That this Difeafe depends on an Effervefcence of the Serum. This is Crato's Oxymel;

Take Hyffop, Veronica, Scabiof. Horehound, Origanum, Penyroial, Carduus, of each M.i. Orris 3vi. Ginger 3ils. Agaric 51s.

#### ( 204 )

3fs. infuse them three Days in a Glass-Veffel warm, in Hifs. of Vinegar, Speedwell and Carduus Water, of each Hifs. boyl them; and to Hifs. add Honey Hiss. The Dose is two or three Spoonfuls.

an

10

di

fer

20

cit

ma

St

10

· 田

m

C

an

an

0

6117

tar.

Ni

E

Ca

th

常ない

1

diff

hat

Sennertus advises this, to shew his Opinion of Acids, Take Pettoral Water Zvi. Syrup of Horehound Zifs. Spirit of Vitriol Dis. mix them.

Hartman commends Vomits of Aqua Benedicta, and this,

Water from Bryony-roots His. Spirit of Vitriol or Sulphur 3s. Dose one Spoonful; and also Sal Armoniac rectified from decrepitated Salt in Wormwood Wine.

Sylvius imputes the Afthma to a Flatus, and partly to a Catarrh, and recommends a mixture of a volatile oily Salt, with a dulcified acid Spirit.

Dr. Willis observes the Orgafmus, or Effervescence in the beginning of the Afthma Fit, and prescribes Sal Prunel in cool Juleps to check it; but I could never find any benefit by his hot Pectorals, and Antispasmodics, Tincture of Castor, of Sulphur, Spirit of Sal Armoniac, Syrup of Garlic, &r. All that I found useful in him was a Vomit, and Opiates; he takes too little notice of Niter, Oxymels, and common Sal Armoniac. The

#### ( 205 )

The best Medicines of the Antients, and the present Age, has too much follow'd his unfuccessful Practice by hot Medicines, no way fuited to the Febrile Effervescence in the Afthma, which requires an Acid to abate the heat of all his Specifics.

Sir Theodore Mayherne treats the Afthma as a Catarrh by too hot Pectorals, Sulphur of Benjamin, Saffron, which are intolerable to the Afthmatic, if not given in cool Liquors, or with Acids.

Etmuller observes, That there are more humid Afthmas, through the fault of the Stomach, than that of the Lungs, and that happens in the Hypochondriacal and Scorbutic: He recommends the following Digeftives; Sal Armoniae Hs. cum gr. xv. Tartar Vitriolat, Crem Tartar, and Salt of Tartar, Spirit of Salt or Niter dulcified, Arcanum Duplicatum, Elixir Proprietatis Paracelsi, Spiritus Carminativus secretus; and Prescribes thus, & Hyssepherer Hyssepherer Hyssepherer water, Oxymel Scylliticum, Briony Compound mater, of each Hissepherer Jin. Spiritus dissolved in Vinegar Jin. Spir. Spiritus For Flatulencies thus, Beyl the Carmi-

native Seeds, and give them with Spirit of Niter

#### ( 206 )

Niter dulcfied, or Spirit of Niter, or Spirit of Anifeeds, and give it in a Decottion of Camomil-flowers, with Anifeeds nad Caroways in Beer. He gives Spirit of Sulphur in distilled Water in the Fit, and commends the Asthmatic Spirit of Verdigrease, Sulphur, Ammoniacum, 20 or 30 drops in Briony-water.

21

ft

Cf

A

00

B

t

PS

もち

F

q.

50-th

b

0

te

A

tu

m

CO

He fays the Convultion of the Diaphragme gives an Afthma without Stertor, or Cough, and he defcribes the Pneumonic Afthma from Mineral Fumes, Abfcefs, Vomica, Empyema, coagulated Blood, Serum, Cachexy, Terror, drinking cold Water when hot, crude Tuberculz, Grando Stones, Gibbolity.

Helmont gives many Althmatic Hiftories, and difproves the Opinion that it is from Phlegm, becaufe it happens fuddenly, and goes off without Spitting, and that the Spit is the product of the Fit, from the Injury done to the Lungs, and therefore he thinks Pectorals ufeleis, and Medicines to the Head upon the account of Catarrhs; and confutes the Opinion, that the growing of the Lungs to the Sides is the occafion of the Afthma.

Grembs isan Helmontian, and prefcribes Cinnabar of Antimony; he uses Oxymels.

## ( 207 )

mels, and Syrup of Tobacco; he observes that a Cachexy or Hydrops at the beginning resembles the Asthma, and they are to be cured by Purging, and Digestives; but the Vis Cressiva of the Viscera by Mercury. He observes fome Asthmas to depend at last on a Vomica; condemns Purging in the Dropsy of the Breast, and only allows a Paracentes.

Riverius describes the Affhma as a Catarrh, and gives all the hot Pectorals; but prudently adds O'. Sulphuris to his Oil of Sugar, and prescribes Spirit of Sulphur 4 or 5 drops in Broth, and prescribes his Gum Pills thus, & Ammoniacum Bdellam diffolved in Vinegar of Squills, of each 3 fs. Flowers of Sulphur 3iii. Oxymel of Squills q. f. make Pills, Dose 4. Lac Sulphuris is milder than the Flowers, and may be given in an oily Mixture: He commends the Oxymel with Agaric, and this is his belt Medicine; Take Cinnanon-water 3ii. Oxymel of Squills 3i. take one spoonful often.

I have mentioned all these Authors Practice, to shew they always used the mixture of some Acid, with their Anti-Asthmatic; and I could not withstand the common Practice of hot Pectorals, and Anti-

#### ( 208 )

Anti-Convultions, if I had not fo much Authority as well as Success by the contrary Method I have proposed. I shall next add those Prognoffics which the old Writers give, That young Men are difficultly cured ; old Men, and the Hereditary Afthma is only palliated; Children are ufually Suffocated by it : If a Peripneumonia happen with the Afthma, and Phrenitis, I generally observed it fatal. The Afthma ufually ends in a Confumption in lean Bodies, and then Tubercula are bred in the Lungs, by the Humours frequently stop'd on the Lungs, as I have observed in a Diffection of a Confumptive Afthmatic, for whom I am certain no hot Pectorals can be convenient. It feems to me much more convenient to keep the Tubercula from Imposthumating by Acids, and by a cool Regimen, than to endeavour to cure them by a hot one.

The Polypus in the Heart oft kills Afthmatics fuddenly, and the Afthma frequently ends in Abfceffes, Tumours, Vomicas, Ulcers, Spitting of Blood.

The Liver is nopt, and the Afilmatic are fubject to the Jaundice, both in the fpitting and dry Afflma.

The

tiby

a

B

a

L

ſ

H

aft

thi

an

Pea

D

fol

W2

ing

he

10

tho

has

Out

#### (209)

The Dropfy or Tympany fucceeds the Afthma, either from too ferous Conftitutions, or the Rupture of the Lymphatics, by the Tumors of the Vifcera, which comprefs them or the Conftriction of the Blood Veffels.

As to the Head, the Afthma very much affects that, with Pain, Fulnefs, Vertigo, Lethargy, Apoplexy, or Palfy.

Dr. Willis gives a Hiftory of a Convulfive Afthma, after a Vertigo, Pain of the Head, with a fear of Swooning, which after a few Days became a Lethargy, and this fettled into a Paroxyfm of the Afthma; and this he cured by Vomiting with Sulphurs of Antimony, Cream of Tartar, of each gr. vi. taken in the Pap of an Apple, and Purging with Refin Jalap gr.v. Merc. Dulcis gr. xii. Caftor gr. iv. Ammoniac. folut. q. f. f. Pil.

I remember an old Afthmatic, who was troubled with difficulty of fwallowing, upon which his Afthma left him; he feemed to me to have fome Tumor, or Palfy in the Oefophagus, but no Methods would relieve it; but fince that he has continued feven or eight Years without the Afthma, who formerly had the Fits periodically for fourteen Years, and P they

#### (210)

they were ocafioned, as he tells me, by drinking Small Beer: The Powder of Juniper-berries most relieves the Difficulty of his Swallowing.

I have observed many Afthmatics, to have the Stone and Gravel, and to die of it, with a stoppage of Water.

A Patient, who had a Convulfive Cough from his Father, was feized with the Afthma, and a fort of Diabetes, with frequent returns of an Intermitting Fever, with Lethargic Symptoms; he fpit much, and had fharpnets of Urine, and frequent Stools; but the Decoction of the Cortex, Vomiting, and Steel-waters cured him for a Twelve Month, when he relapfed into the fame Symptoms: His Legs fwelled, the Afthma returned by Fits; he was obfcurely Feverifh, and died full of Flefh. All thefe Symptoms depended on an Intermitting Fever originally.

I have observed divers Afthmatics with Rheumatic Pains, and Looseness at last, and others confume by a Diabetes, and a great quantity of Water is made out of the Fits, as well as in them ; and when this flux of Water stops, the Afthmatic become Hydropic, their Legs swell, and their Breasts are filled with Water. W

W

0

m

at

# (211)

I shall add some particular Cases of Afthmas, communicated to me by my Ingenious Friend Dr. Fred. Stare.

Mr. Orlibar of the Temple, having been fome Years Afthmatic, died fuddenly; in his Body opened, the Lungs were free from any Impolthumation, or other Caufe of his Death; but the Ventricles of the Brain were full of Water, and on that depended his Drowfinefs, Giddinefs, and a constant Afthma upon motion long before his Death.

Capt. Brent had the Afthma with fwelled Legs, and could not lie down in his Bed; he died fuddenly, by ftooping to take up an Orange; his Breaft and Head were full of Water.

n d

20

ISS.

at

es, te d

1-

He gave me alfo a farther account of a Child very Rickery with a fwelled Head, who was for fome Months Afthmatic, without any Injury appearing in the Lungs, by Diffection, but the Head was full of Water.

Dr. Slare gave me a particular account of Sir Patient Ward's Afthma, with an Hæmoptoe, which lasted about a Year : He often hawk'd up Blood mixt with tough Phlegm ; the Cortex did him no Service, after he became Hydropical, the Legs and P 2 Belly

# ( 212 )

Belly fwell'd; two fpoonfuls of the Acetum Scylliticum vomited him, and made him to make much Water; then Steel and Diuretics relieved him for fome time : and Laudanum help'd his Dyfpnea always. When he was opened, 4 or 5 Quarts of Water was found in his Belly, and two in his Breaft, his Lungs were without Schirrous Matter, or Tubercula; the Lungs fluck to the Right Side: He believes this Afthma to have been Nervous, and the Dropfy to have happened at laft : He observed the Left Kidney full of Water, and Hydatides encompass it without, from whofe Rupture the Dropfy might come; the Cartilages of the Sternum were grown Offeous, the Gall in the Bladder was thick and muddy; there appeared no Vestigia of the Hæmoptoe mentioned, upon his Lungs.

The Inundation of the Brain, Breaft, Abdomen, by an Hydropical Serum, is commonly the effect of an old Afthma, and the Anafarcous Tumors of the Body, depend all on the frequent Conftriction of the circulating Veffels, by the Afthma Fits, by which they are weakned, obftructed, and broken, and the digeftion of Humours decays; as the Circulation is

#### ( 213 )

is depressed, a thin Serolity also gives matter to all the forts of Dropfy, into which the Asthmatic fall, through too much Bleeding, or Hæmorrhages, as it might be in the Case described.

I shall next give a remarkable Cafe, communicated to me by the Ingenious and Learned Dr. Tylon, by which my Hypothesis will be plainly demonstrated, that the Asthma Fit may depend on the contraction of the Veliculæ, and Bronchia of the Lungs; and how far that may depend on the straining the Lungs by swift running, or the Causes the Dr. mentions I must leave the Reader to judge.

# A Cafe of an Asthma communicated by Dr. Tylon,

When I was a Student formerly at Oxon, hearing of a Spanel Dog, that had been noted for his fwiftnefs in Running; but of late, and on a fudden, had fallen into fo great a fhortnefs of Breath, that he could not run 15 or 20 Yards, but was forced to ftand ftill and pant for a good while after, would breath very fhort and quick, and with a great deal of Labour. I had a Curiofity of feeing him, and upon P 3 my

B

2,

1,

n

0-

on

15

#### ((214)))

In

te

my own Observation found what was told me, tobe exactly true. The Person that kept the Dog could give me no account how this happened to him; but being hereby rendred altogether useles, for a small matter I purchased the Dog, having a mind to see what occasion'd this shortness of Breath upon so little motion.

Upon Diffection in the Abdomen, there was nothing unufual or uncommon to be observed : But upon opening the Thorax, I found the Lungs to be very much pull'd up, or contracted, fo that they did feem to fill but half that space which the Lungs of an other Dog of that fize would occupy: However I did not find the Lungs in any other respect out of Order; there was no Discolouration, no Adhesion to the Pleura ; and within no Tubercule or Glands, but the Subftance of the Lungs, foft and fpongy as ufually. Upon blowing into the Wind-Pipe the Lungs would be inflated fomewhat, but not half formuch as in an other Dog. And what hindered this Inflation farther, I could plainly perceive was the Contraction of the outward or common Membrane of the Lungs, which did feem upon this Contraction to be fomewhat InIncrassated, and its Colour a little Whi-

In the Cavity of the Thorax, I obferved a finall quantity of Water, and fometimes did fuspect whether this Water (if of a Corrofive Nature) might not contribute to the Contraction of the Membrane. But this I did not think of, till 'twas too late to make tryal of the Nature of this Extravafed Serum; it being flung away; nor upon the whole do I think it might be the caufe of it. But here I rather suspect the Dog might have lighted upon fome fort of Poyfon which might particularly affect that Membrane, and caufe the Contraction. I will not trouble you with at prefent the Reafons I have for fuch a Conjecture; or if it was not from an outward Poylon taken inward, it might otherwise happen from an Internal Caufe.

However this Observation plainly Shews us the Reason why upon Motion this Dog proved Afthmatical, nor could he continue his Motion but for fo fhort a Time; fince by means of the Contraction of the outward Membrane, the Lungs could receive by Inspiration, not half the Quantity of Air at a time, as it could  $P_4$  be-

## (216)

before or ufually was wont to do. I fhall give fome Obfervations which were Communicated to me by my wor4 thy Friend Dr. Pierce of Bath, about four Years fince, by which he affures me of the great benefit of the Bath-Water; which he tried on many Afthmatics both in the nervous and humorous Afthma, in which the Bath-Waters dilute the Vifcidity of the Phlegm, and deterges it by helping its Expectoration.

He first mentions the Benefit the Old Dutchess of Ormond received, by drinking Bath-Waters, when she was fixty Years Old, which recovered her Appetite, helped her Expectoration so well, that she could lie down in her Bed, and walk about her Room before she went away; and on this good Success was incouraged to visit the Bath, and drink the Waters there some Years after.

The fecond Cafe he gives me, is of one Mr.Comin, who came both Afthmatical, and Scorbutical, and Hydropical to Bath, where he drank the Waters, which paffed well after Purging, Vomiting, and the use of Aqua Afthmatica Quercitani, and Aqua Raphani Composita; he recovered his Breath and Appetite, and bathed

## (217)

thed frequently: By all which, in two Months time, he perfectly recover'd to a Miracle.

The third Cafe is of the Lady Mary Kirke, who oft drank the Bath-Waters for an Orthopnæa, with great Advantage; for thereby her Fits did Intermit many Months. She bathed by the Lady Elizabeth Littleton's Perfwalion, who fays, fhe was cured of her Afthma chiefly by Bathing.

The fourth Cafe is of Sir Edward Villers, who upon the Healing of an Ulcer in the Leg, was Afthmatic, for which he drank the Waters, and his Fits came not fo ofr, and the Pain of the Ulcer was relieved by bathing the Leg.

The fifth Cafe is of a Lady of Thirty or Forty, Hydropical and Althmatic, who both drank the Waters and bathed for the Althma.

The fixth Cafe is of Mrs. Whittacre, who had a great Cough and Palpitation of the Heart, with fhortnefs of Breath, and fhe was always hot and feverifh : She recovered by drinking Bath-Waters.

The feventh Cafe is of Sir Robert Crawen, who was Afthmatic, and in his fat Body the Thymus was observed to be en-

#### (218)

enlarged to a great bulk, which upon any great commotion by Laughing, Talking earnestly, gave him fevere Afthmatic Fits, with blackness in the Face.

I

bi

SI

D

th

m

n

di

OF

ID

T

G

or

Sel

tin

an

This Cafe fhews us how readily the Afthma is produc'd by any external Compreffion of the Lungs, and these Fits did immediately go off again, on the alteration of the Pressure of this Glandulous Tumour. He died not of this Afthma, but of a Fever.

The former Cafes teach us to use the Bath-Waters for the viscid Humours of the Afthmatic; and two of the Cafes shew the benefit the Hydropical and Afthmatical have by drinking the Waters, and bathing, which is an extream difficult Cafe to Cure; but these Cafes being Matter of Fact, ought to be admitted; and I acknowledge my felf obliged to Dr. Pierce for this Information he has given me in the particular Cafes defcribed. Botrys is a Lamium in Tafte and Vertue, and like Ground-Ivy; I use it in Syrup, Decoction, or Thea, 'tis useful for

Coughs.

The Lungs must be cleanfed in the Periodic Afthma after every Fit, and the obstructed Glands opened by Pectorals in the Pulmonic Afthma. I. By

## (219)

1. By Bitters of the Deadnettle Clafs, Gill Beer, Gill Thea, fweetned with its own Syrup, or Powder of Motherwort mixed with Oxymel Scylliticum, Syrup of Horehound with Milk-water.

2. By the fmoaky Bitters, as the Thiftle bitters, Syrup of Carduus, Scabiofe mixed with Oxymel Scylliticum, and Oil of Sweet Almonds, or elfe fome Pectoral Drink.

3. By the bitter Gums; I have ufed thefe, Myrrh, Olibanum; Caftor, Nutmegs, of each 3i. Syrup of Violets, and Oxymel Scylliticum, of each 3i. make a Linctus. Take Pennyroial Water, Rhenifh Wine, of each 1bi. Ammoniac 3i. diffolve them, add Syrup of Vinegar 3iv, or Tincture of Gum Ammoniac 20 drops in any Oxymel, Elistir Proprietatis Paracelfi 3i. in finall Beer every Morning. The Antients mixed Honey, Turpentine, Galbanum, in an Electuary Hiera cum Colocynthide.

4. Terebinthinate Bitters; Tar Pills, or Pills of Wood-Lice, Salt of Amber, Sal Pranel with Nutmegs and Turpentine.

Balfam of Sulphur, or Gilcad Balfam in an Oxymel, with Pectorals; Syrup of Enula

#### ( 220 )

Enula Campana ziv. Oil of Sulphur zi. mix for an Eclegma.

Agaric which grows on Turpentinetree, in an Oxymel.

ti

0

b

F

b

T

di

The Kernels of Pine in an Emulion, with Almonds.

Hiera cum Agarico.

Savin poudered zi. Butter 3fs. Honey 3ii. mix them; used for three days, and repeat it again after three days.

Frankincenfe and Sugar Candy, in a roafted Apple : Or,

The Roots of Valerian, Butterbur, boiled with Liquorifh, Raifins, Anifeeds, or in an Oxymel.

5. The fweet fmoaky Bitters, as Bellis Major, in Decoction, or Syrup, or Thea.

Coltsfoot Syrup, or Eyrngo-roots, Centaury the greater, and Erigerum.

6. By the fweet acrid Aromaticks;
Seeds of Parfley, Anife, Cinnamon, Dill, Parfnep, Roots of Parfnep, Smirwine,
Panax, Pimpinella, Saxifrago, Peucedamum, decocted Diacymenum, with Oil of Anifeeds in Tablets, Diafpoliticum 3i.
mixed with two or three parts of Honey.

7. Naufeous Bitters of the Lyrbanis Clafs, Gentian, Centaury, Trifol. Fibrinum, Saponaria, the bitter Decoction with-

#### ( 221 )

without Sena for a Month, Theriaca, Diatesferon, cum opio, vel sine illo.

8. Fetid Bitters naufeous and purgative; Ariftolochia zi. with Honey, Juice of Briony, with Honey, Syrup of Tobacco, diftilled Water of Tobacco with Syrup of Violets, Juice of Squills, with Honey, equal parts, boiled; the Dofe is 3 fs. before or after Meat.

Take Vinegar, Honey, of each 3iv. Fountain-Water 15i. Rhue one handful, Cinnamon, Cloves, of each half a dram, boil them, and make an Oxymel; the Dofe is one fpoonful with a draught of Water.

2

9

ca.

1.

s;

ne, 4 01 元

nis

Dri-

tion

ith:

One Pound of Squills is used to be infused in the still of Vinegar. Hippocrates is faid to be Author of this Medicine.

Galen prefcribes it in a Morning, and the walking after it feven Stadia; but I find 'tis better to ufe it at Night, becaufe it Vomits in the Morning; and I have found it neceffary to add Aromatics to it, or ftrong Waters, or Sugar to make it a Syrup, or mix it with Syrup.

9. Cauftic Acrids; Powder of Aron with Oxymel, or elfe let 3 i. be boiled in this. of Oxymel.

Virtue. This

#### ( 222 )

This is Archigenes's Medicine; The crude Juice of Squills, boil it with equal parts of Honey, the Dofe is one or two fpoonfuls before or after Meat.

Add 3 fs. of Nettle-feeds to a Pectoral Drink of thii.

Re Aq. Cinnam. Syr. Vol. Aceti Scyllitici, a.a. 31.

Preferved Garlic and its Syrup is commended, Leek Pottage, Onions boiled and buttered, or roafted, and Honey mixed with them and Butter; Sagapenum boiled and diffolved in a Decoction of Enula condited *ži*. Tol. tbii. add Syrup of Vinegar *žiii*.

I was informed by a Lady, that Garlic applied to the Feet, cured her of the Fit of the Afthma; and I knew one who took an Infufion of Garlic in Cephalic Waters, with her Steel Medicines. Infufe one Head of Garlic in 12 Ounces of Cephalic Waters, Rofemary-Lilly, and Black-Cherry, a.a. Ziv. ftrain it.

10.Creft Acrids; Syrup of Eryfimum, Muftard Seed with Hony, Juice of Horfe-Radifh Roots, with Sugercandy, Decoction *Caulis rubri*, an Oxymel with Rue 16fs. of Rue in fix Gallons of finall Ale; 'tis not unpleafant, but a great Diuretic.

aller of

. , Sal

#### ( 223 )

Sal Armoniae 31s. Rocket Seed with Honey 3iv. or the Powders in Mulfum.

11. Mofs Acrids; used as Syrup, or boyl it in Drink, and fweeten it; or one Handful boyled in this. of Posset Drink with Figs and Liquorice.

12. Leguminous Acrids; Seeds of Woodbine Berries, drank with Wine for forty Days, or the Conferve of the Flower; thefe are great Diuretics, as most Pectorals are: In Thoracis Morbis femper advena respiciendum.

13. Laurel Acrids; Bay Berries with Honey, Decoction of Guaicum, or Misletoe with Pectorals, or sweetened with Hony.

14. Aromatic Acrids; Thyme, Stechas, Hyffop, Decoction of Calaminth with Figs, Flowers of Rofemary boyled in Water with Hony, Pennyroyal, or Mint boyled in Oxymels, Decoction of China with Cephalics, and a Cock.

15. Burning Aromatics; Orris Tin-Eture in Anifeed Water, or the Roots decocted in an Oxymel, Species Diaireon made into Rotula, with Oyl of fweet Anifeed and Sal Prunell. or elie the Roots infused in finall Ale, or candied.

16. All

## ( 224 )

16. All Purgers and Vomitories are pectoral, as Briony, Tobacco, Squills, Agaric, Aloes: Take Syrup of Tobacco, Horehound, Oxymel Scilliticum, Aqua Brion. ad Zi. Misce Dos. Cochi.

17. Hony, which is a fweet Gum of Plants, Suger, and Mead, and all Oxymels with Orris, Ennula, Liquorice, Leaves of Scabius, Coltsfoot, Horehound, Figs, Dates, Hyffop in Barly Water with Hony.

18. Fœtid Parts of Animals; the Lungs of a Fox, in the Decoction of a Cock, take 3vi. with 31s. of Oxymel.

Infusion of Millepedes 3i. in this of the Decoction of Woods.

0

an

m

of

20

Be

th

too

Au

Ta

dei

ACH

Fox Lungs powdered with Hony or Oxymel.

Take Caftor 3ii. Gum Ammoniacum diffolved in Vineger of Squills 3fs. make Pills: Anifeed and Sulphur may be added ad 3ii.

I have prefcribed thus:

B. Castorei, Salis Succini aa. 3ii. Flores Benzo : Croci aa. 3i. Ammoniac Acet. Solut. Grains v. Succi Licoritia, fiant Pil.

19. Salts, Sp. Cervi Fuliginis, Cranii, adde 31s. of Spiritus Lavendula to 3i.

# ( 225 )

3i. of the volatile Spirit, the Dofe is thirty Drops in pectoral Waters; these are fittest in Faintings.

B. Millepedes calcined to a Whitenefs, mix them with Hony, the Dofe is two Spoonfuls before and after Meat.

20. Sulphureous Medicines, as the Balfams and Tinctures of Sulphur and Antimony, Flowers of Sulphur  $\Im i$ . with Butter.

I never found any Benefit by Sulphur Medicines in the Afthma.

21. Sneezing Powders help Expectoration, but Vomitories most.

22. Lubricating Mucilages and Oyls, help up the Phlegm, as Hydromels and Oxymels, and pectoral Decoctions, Oyls, and Sugar: Sapo-Venetus, Sperma Ceti 3i. mixed with Oyl of Almonds, and Syrup of Balfi, and Lucutellus Balfam, Butter and Hony mixed, or Hony boyled in Beer.

I have mentioned all these Pectorals, that those may be chosen which are not too hot, but suitable to each Constitution, Avicenna gives us this Direction from the Tastes of Medicines; Acutum est aliud, deinde amarum, deinde salsum, quoniam acutum est fortius ad resolvendum, abstergendum,

#### ( 226 )

gendum, & incidendum quam amarum, deinde falsum; ponticum est frigidius, deinde stypticum, postea acetosum, quamvis vero acetosum sit nimis frigidum, tamen majoris infrigidationis, propter Penetrationem. The old Opinion was, that in turning Wine into Vineger, the fiery and aerial Parts were evaporated by the Ferment, or the Heat of the Sun, as John Anglus describes it.

I shall next give some Remarks on some Errors in Authors.

di

fig L

to

A

SA

to

th

A

di

Ve

1. All very violent Purges and Vomits, used by them, commonly difagree with the Afthmatic, and give Fits.

2. Strong Expectorators, and all hot Medicines are injurious in the Beginning of Fits, as Balfams, Tinctures, Spirits, and ftrong Cordials, Wine, Brandy, Spirits, chymical Oyls, and Gums.

3. Eating any folid thing the first Days of the Fit is dangerous.

4. All Fumes of Tobacco, Amber, or Arfenic, are fuffocating.

5. All Oyntments to the Breaft heat it, and offend by their Smells, as Oyl of Amber, and the Axungias, the rubbing of the Breaft rarifies the Spirits too much: Fomentations to the Breaft are likewife mifchievous, mischievous, and Plaisters hinder Respiration.

( 227 )

6. All Motion makes the Fit worfe; Fire, a close Room, all actually hot Diet, is intolerable.

7. No Medicines for the Afthma must be infused in Wine or Brandy; no chymical Oyls are useful.

8. Errhines, Apophegmatifms, quilted Caps, are Miftakes, and Sternutories dangerous in the Fit; the burning an Iffue on the coronal Sutures, Breaft; fignifie nothing; Cupping-glaffes, and Lotions of the Feet are mifchievous; no Benefit is to be expected from Iffues.

9. Frequent bleeding brings a Dropfy; bleed only twice in a Year, or upon extraordinary Fits.

10: Much Water drinking is injurious to the old, and pure unmixt Acids, great Aftringents ftop the Breath; the mucilaginous Gums breed Phlegm, all very hot Aromatics, and odorate things inflame too much.

0ľ

h

h:

fe

IS,

The Cure of the hysteric Afthma in the Fit is the fame as that of the spitting Afthma, because there is the fame Windiness in the Stomach, the fame Effervescence of Humors, and Rarefaction of  $Q_2$  Spirits,

## ( 228 ))

Spirits, as in the other Afthma ; no hot hyfteric Medicine is ufeful in the Fit, as volatile Spirits, or Gums, or Caftor, but only Laudanum twelve Drops, or more in a mild hyfteric Draught, the first and fecond Night if neceffary, after a Glifter or Vomit.

For the preventing this Species of Afthma from its Returns, we must; 1

Pfu

to

m

Sp

it

10

Pe

m

fer

Of

P

1. Use the same Vomits and Purgers which are recommended in the other Species of Afthmas: Purging Salt is most agreable; and let the Vomits be with Carduus Water and Squills once a Month, and the Purge once in source a Month, the Fits remit, and Landanum after them.

2. The fame Digeftives are convenient, becaufe there is the fame flatulent and flymy Cacochymia in all Species, but in the hyfteric Althma, becaufe it arofe from those Fits; hyfterical Medicines may be mixt with Digestives.

3. The Febrifuges must here be used against the Effervescencies, and Fever Fits, to prevent their Returns, as a Decoction of the *Cortex*; give two Ounces with an hysteric Julap, and repeat it till four Ounces are taken, or else two Ounces in an Electuary, and this ought to be repeated

#### ( 229 )

peated upon the Turns of the Year; this Medicine I have found moft effectual in the hysteric Afthma, much more than in the fpitting Afthma, for which reason I guess that the periodic hysteric Fits depended originally on a latent Fever, but in time they introduce a flimy flatulent Cacochymia, which requires due Evacuations and Digeftives, and then the Repetition of the Cortex with mild Antihysterics.

4. After the general Methods proposed, some Antihysterics may be used, fuch as the Aromatic, or foetid Cephalics, to rectifie the flatulent Spirits, and they must be fuited both to the Constitution of the Patient, and the Nature of the Afthma, which will not admit of any inciding hot Medicines, without fome Acid to abate them.

Some Afthmatics have commended Spirit of Lavender, but I always observed it very injurious to me in my Fits, and it increases the Straitness, because of the Perfume : Pennyroyal, Sage, Clary, Rue, may be boyled in Oxymels; and I obferve that the old Writers prefcribe 3fs. of Caftor in an Oxymel, or elfe in their Seven Grains of Cinnabar of Anti-solog

re-

ed

ommended by Gremmes, to be taken for Zedoary

#### (230)

Zedoary may be decocted in Oxymels, and its Powder given in Pills: I find thefe Prefcriptions in Zecchius: Sal Armoniac Ji. Musk two Grains, Crocus Grains three in Oxymel Scylliticum, make Pills.

The Volatility of the Flowers of Benjamin, and their fmoaky Smell, is injurious to fome Perfons, and for that Reafon *Bartolet* prepares them beft by a *Balneum* and Diftillation.

Take Ammoniac diffolved by Vineger, Juice of Licorice aa. 3ij. Flowers of Benjamin 3fs. Crocus 9i. Mosch 9fs. with Oxymel, make Pills.

In Extremities Crocus Hs. Musch Grain one; take it in Oxymel.

Salt of Amber, Sal Prunell. Crabs-Eyes, aa. 3ij. or Oyl of Amber in Lozenges with Salt Prunell. and Cream of Tartar.

This was used antiently, Castor 3i. Ammoniacum diffolved in Vineger 3ij. make Pills; for two Doses 3i. of Saffron may be infused in thij. of any Liquor; but the Saffron must be roasted in a Limon: I must confess I never found Benefit by Saffron.

Seven Grains of Cinnabar of Antimony is commended by Grembs, to be taken for a Month in a Spoonful of Briony Water.

I have been very much inclined to believe that those Acids which relieve Epileptic Fits, which are from a higher Degree of Flatulency in the Spirits, would relieve the hysteric Asthma, and I propose them to the Reader's Consideration.

The volatile Spirit of Vitriol ten or twenty Drops, the phlegmatic Spirit ten Drops, or the Oyl dulcified, or the common four Drops in an hysteric Julap.

Spirit of Vitriol distilled with Urine according to Hartman, Clyffus Vitrioli.

Spirit of Gum Ammoniacum, Sulphur, and Æs Viride in Etmaller, which mix in equal Parts with Spirits of Anifeed.

Spirit of Sculls, mixed with Spirit of Vitriol.

Spiritus Vitrioli Phelosophicus, Julapium Camphoratum with Sal Prunell.

Spiritus Veneris, Gutte 6. ad 12.

or

2

1 B

Take Sal Prunell. Ziij. volatile Salt of Harts-horn or Vipers, or Flowers of Sal Armoniae 3i. Dofe Ji. ad 3fs.

Mixtura simplex Ii. ad Ii. in Milk Water and Briony compound.

Q4

Y Take

#### (232))

Take Peony Water 3ij. Spirit of Blackberries Zi. volatile Spirit of Hungarian Vitriol.

Rue Water, Bryony Water, Vineger of Rue or Squills, Syrup of Peony, of each one Ounce.

Sweet Allom Water, Apoplectic Water, of each 3ij. add Phlegm of Vitriol.

For an Opiate, torrified Opium 3i. Bryony Water zvi. Spirit of Vitriol 3i. digeft Nitrum Saturnisatum in Bates, or Spiritus Saturni ex Saccharo : The acid Spirit of Sal Armoniac.

Spiritus Nitri dulcis Ai. ad 3i. No Steel feems to agree with the hyfteric Afthma, but the Extractum Ecphracticum cum Aloe, or Steel Waters in young Afthmatics, becaufe it stops in the Stomach, straitens the Breath, and raises an Effervescence in the Humors: The Roots and Seeds of Peony ought to be tryed in Powders or Decoctions, continuing it for some Months.

No fœtid Fumes of Amber, or Affafœtida can be proper in the hyfteric Afthma, therefore all Fumes muit be avoided ; but the Smell of Vineger is more agreable if mixed with Rue, or without it.

AN

# APPENDIX,

( 233 )

ather, gave a floor His with very H

Containing some Observations omitted, and one about Weighing of an Asthmatic after Sanctorius's Manner; with an Account of the Weight before, and in, and after the Fits.

that by its finivering Contraction con OME Mornings the Afthmatic (who was betwixt 40 and 50 Years old) upon weighing falting was 179, others 178, and 180, and 181. But the Day before the Fits in the Morning, May 2d. 1698, he was 180 Pound (including the weight of the Chair 33 Pound, and the Cloaths.) May 3d. the Morning weight was 178 Pound, after having paffed by Urine a Pound and half, by Stool half a Pound. The Weather was very cold, and Wind N.E. and it Snowed in the Afternoon; the Afthmatic drank Ale, which with the change of Weather,

## ( 234 )

Weather, gave a fhort Fit with very little Spit. The Observations I shall make are,

1. The Defluxion of Serum is very evident by the quantity of Urine unufual, and fome Spit more than ufual, and the Stools loofe.

2. The change of the Air to Snow made the Air lighter, which lefs compreffing the Blood difpofed it to the Afthma Fit with the drinking of Ale, which occafioned an Effervefcence.

3. The great coldness of the N.E. Wind affected the sense of the Skin, and that by its shivering Contraction compressed the Circulation of the rarefied Humours inwardly, and occasioned the flux of Serum by Urine and Stool.

4. There was no unufal weight obferved in the Afthmatic the day before the Fit, therefore the Matter of the Afthma is not any great quantity of Serum, fince it cannot be obferved by weighing; but the caufe of it must be an Effervescence of Humours, which are flatulent and ferous.

The Althmatic took a fpoonful of this Acid Syrup in 15. of Water, and repeated it three times before Dinner time : Take Vinegar 15. Aron Roots 3ii. infufe

#### (235)

fuse them three Days, strain them, and add Sugar 15 fs. make a Syrup.

Orris, Enula Campane, or Horfe Radifh, or Fenil Roots may be infufed in the fame manner, or any Carminative Seed 3i. in 1bi. of Vinegar to make the like Syrup.

These cool things, Toast and Water, with an acid Syrup abate the Windiness, and compress the rarefied Serum; for the Humours are rarefied by Heat into Bubbles, which we call Wind. We find in Vinegar a cool Taste from its acid, fit for the cooling of bilious or oily Humours; the Acrimony in it makes it biting, and, as the Antients say, fit for Obstructions, from viscid Humours, where there is a Fever too because it cools and opens both. The Water drank in the Morning run off by Urin before Dinner.

The Diet of the Afflimatic on the Fit day was at Dinner two Eggs, Toaft and Butter, Small Beer and Water after Dinner two Pound and a half in weight, the weight of Supper one Pound and quarter, Diet in all, three Pound three quarters. The weight loft on the Day of the Affhma, three Pound three quarters; by Urine, three Pound; Infenfibly three quarters.

By

#### (236)

By this 'tis evident, the Infenfible is thefourth part of the whole weight loft on the day of the Fit; and it appears to me, that ufually the Infenfible Perfpiration in April laft, when it was cold Weather, amounted to but a third or fourth part of the weight loft. The day following the Afthmatic was the fame weight as on the Morning of the Afthma 178, which is lighter than ufually.

May 6. the former Fit being only fuppreffed, the next change of Weather on this day towards Rain, the Wind Weft, and the Weather warm, raifed a new Effervescence and gave a new Fit, rather worse than the former.

May 4th the weight was 178.

5th the weight was 178 three quarters, the weight not confiderably increased before the Fit.

6th in the Morning, lost then by a Stool and Water this.

The weight was in this Morning 178 Pound, after the Evacuation mentioned.

The whole weight lost the day before the Fits was thus;

Breakfast thi. 3 quarters.

Bŷ

Loft before Dinner by Urine and Stool <sup>th</sup>i. 3 qu.

Dinner

# (237)

Dinner Huifs.

Loft before Supper by Urine Hi.

By Perspiration this.

Supper Ibi. 1 qu.

Loft in the Night and next Morning, By Urine and Stool thiifs.

By Perspiration #bfs.

Add the weight to the Diet which was byfs.

The Morning weight May 5th, 178 th.

3 qu. both 184, 1 qu.

Loft fenfibly by Urine and Stool fbv. 1 qu. Infenfibly thi.

Loft in all #vi. 1 qu.

The weight next day after the Afthma, by which we perceive the lofs of weight in the Fit, 177 Pound, which is the least weight, lesser than usually.

Note, The Perspiration was the fixth part the day before the Fit. Therefore the tenfible Evacuations are five times as much as the Perspiration the day before the Fit.

I weighed a Boy of Fourteen, the weight lost in one day, May 2. was two Pound 3 qu.

# By Urine Hifs.

Diet in all fbii. 3q. By Stool # 3qu. By Perspiration tofs.

which is about the 4th part of the fenfible Evacutions, and of the whole weight loft the fifth. If

#### (238)

If we confider the different weight of our Air, and the groffness of our Diet, in respect of the Italian Air and Diet, we may well suppose a difference in England, where the sensible Evacuations are three or four times as much as the Insensible: But, by Sanctorius, in Italy the sensible Evacuations are exceeded by the infensible, and they amount to five Pound, if any one eats eight Pound every day; but much the contrary happens here, the sensible commonly exceed the infensible three or four times.

The following Purge was communicated to me by a Spitting Periodic Afthmatic, by which he ufually cured his Fits, and he takes it any time of the Night the Fits happen.

Take Sal Prunel gr. x. Tartar Vitriolate gr. vi. Diagryd gr. iv. Lenitive Electuary zii. make a Bolus.

An Ingenious Phyfician in London, whofe Name I have forgot, inform'd me that he gave  $\exists i$  of Merc. Dulcis in a Fit, which by giving two or three loofe Stools, it foon relieved.

D

00

fo

If any Lenitive Purge may be admitted in a Fit, none fo convenient as Purging

#### (239)

ging Salt 3s. or 3vi. and Laudanum at Night after.

This following bitter Acid never fails to give a Stool next Day, if two Drams or half an Ounce be taken at Night with Toaft and Water a draught.

Take Squills dried Zii. one Orange Pill, steep them in Vinegar thi. for a Week, and strain it out. It ought to be Sunned fourteen Days.

Strong Purges I have observed both in the Fit and out of it, to be injurious to the thin Hysterical and Hypochondriacal Afthmatics.

June the 4th, I Diffected a Broken Winded Mare, who was exceedingly troubled with that Difeafe, and fold for the Dogs Meat, being much Emaciated : I found all the Vifcera in the Belly very found, the Liver had very little of any Schirrofities difpirfed in it, the Spleen had none; there was no Water in the Belly nor Breaft; the Diaphragme had no Injury, but was preffed by the Guts much up towards the Thorax: And the prone Posture of Horfes makes the Guts more fubject to prefs on the Diaphragme, than it happens in Men, whole Belly hangs below the Diaphragme, and this occasions the Breathing very short in Horfes, as foon as they have been Water'd, or full fed.

In the Thorax the Lungs appear'd very muchfwelled or puffed up, and appear'd much bigger in the Broken Winded than ufual; the Out-

#### ( 240 )

Out-fide of the Lungs feem'd like Tubercula, but upon preffing I found those only Bladders very much diffended with Air, as I found by cutting them. I blew up fome Lobes of the Lungs, and found the Air would not come out again, nor the Lungs fubfide of themfelves ; by which it was plain, that the Bladders of the Lungs had been extended or broken by fome Strain in Running, and that the Air remaining either in the over-diftended Bladders, or elfe paffing through fome Breach of them, betwixt the Fibrous Substance of the Lungs; that caus'd a continual Inflation of the whole Lungs, which compreffing the Bronchia and Blood-Vessels, produces a continual Dyspnæa, in which the external Air cannot pais freely thro' the Trachea and its Branches in Infpiration or Expiration; and this difficulty occafions the great Labour and Nifus of the Refpiratory Muscles. There was no Polypus in the Heart, or the Blood Veffels of the Lungs; no Adhesion of the Lungs to the Sides, nor any figns of any quantity of Phlegm in the Trachea and Bronchia, nor no Decay, Tumor, or Corruption or Obstruction in any Part of them, only the Bladders feem'd to make the Superficies of the Skin of the Lungs unequal, and the whole fpungy Subftance of the Lungs feem'd fwelled with Wind; for no quantity of Humour appear'd any where. This Mare had not been Broken Winded above one Year. By this Observation it appears, that the Broken Wind depends on an Injury done to the Membranes, rather than to the Humours of the Body.

al

W

01

T

K

rai

Ne

Ne

ope

tort

of

W

If

tion

fron

Blac

1S to

thei

FINIS.

## ( 241 )

## POSTSCRIPT.

### Some Reflexions on the Diffection of the Broken Winded Mare.

Herearetwo forts of windy Tumors in the external Membranes of the Body; the one from the admission of the external Air amongst the Membranes, as appears in a Wound of the Thorax, in which the Membranes are inflated if the Orifice be fmall: And another windy Tumor happens to the Membranes of the Knees, Feet, Hands, Eyes, Belly, by a rarified Serum filling the Canals of the Nervous Fibers, and this is properly a Nervous Inflation: For if this Tumor be opened, no Humour appears to come forth. I defire to apply this Distinction of flatulent Tumors, to the Inflations which produce the flatulent Afthma, and I shall reckon two Species of these Inflations; the first is, the Broken Wind, from the Rupture or Dilatation of the Bladders of the Lungs, by which the Air is too much retain'd in the Bladders, or their Interstices, and thereby produces a R perma-

#### permanent flatulent Tumor in the whole Substance of the Lungs. 'Tis not eafy to explain the Production of a permanent flatulent Tumor in the Lungs, by a Strain in Running; but by fuppoling the Bladders of the Trachea too much diftended, and the muscular Fibers which constringe them in Expiration thereby over-ftretched, and made unfit to express the Air afterwards : So that thefe Bladders retaining more Air than is usual, the Subftance of the Lungs must appear always Inflated. I could not find any other Diforder, but this flatulent Tumor of the Lungs, in this Mare I Diffected, therefore I shall impute all the Symptoms to this only Caufe, though I have with the Vulgar conjectur'd, that the Difease depended on Polypous Concretions of Blood, or Tubercula, which are observed in fome Horfes; they are only the effects of a long Broken Windednefs, by its long continuance. This windy Tumor, by compreffing the Trachea, hinders the admission of the Air, and makes a laborious Refpiration : The fame Tumor hinders the Efflation of Air, which occafions the Muscles of the Belly to ftrain much, as appears by their Working in the Flank. The

山口の見る日間の見ているのである」

In the bec

206

(242)

#### sloring and an of 243 )

The return of the Blood to the Heart' and the descent of the Chyle into the Guts, and its depuration, fecretion, and distribution, do naturally depend on the Motion of the Diaphragme and Breaft, and that being hinder'd, the Horfe is languid, and fainty, for want of a free Circulation, which is also stopt on the Lungs, by the flatulent Tumor of them, and that much encreases the Tumor and Angustia, Fulness and Straitness in the Breaft. The Parts are Emaciated for want of a full Circulation of Humours into them ; neither can the Chyle be well prepared or affimulated to the Blood, where the Circulation is weak and ftopt; 'Tis only digested into a flimy Nutriment, which is the Matter of the flimy Phlegm, both in the Stomach and Lungs. A Windiness is always observed in the Belly of the broken Winded Horfes, for want of a quick Distribution, or a thorough Preparation, or Fermentation of the Aliments, for which the flimy Ferment of the Stomach feems unfit.

Ĩ

fs

e

12

to

he

te x, n

ts ing by the bo-

ca- man

仇

These Horses Wheeze much after filling their Stomachs, by Water, or Food, because that keeps up the Diaphragme, and that by reason of their prone Polture R 2 of

#### ( 244 )

of Body prefies much upon the Lungs, which by their Tumor take up too much room in the Breaft. The other flatulent Tumor of the Lungs depending on a rarefied Serum in the Nerves and Fibers of the Membranes, is fufficiently defcribed in this Treatife, as to its frequent Paroxyfms and Caufes.

1

TE

1

G

R

A

0

On

th

Ja:

As it happens in external flatulent Tumors, they at first go off and return, but at last fix in permanent flatulent Tumors; fo it is in the flatulent Afthma, the frequent nervous Inflations induce at last a constant windy Tumor, or Inflation; and it ought to be confider'd how far the holding the Breath in Hysteric Fits, or the violent Coughing in long Catarrhs, or the great Diffention of the Lungs, by an Inflammation in the Peripneumonia, may ftrain the Bladders, and their Muscular Fibers, and thereby produce the fame Rupture, or Dilatation, or Hernia, as happens in the broken Winded. This must be observ'd by the help of the Microfcope; and if the Air blown into any Lobe will not be expelled thence, by the natural Tone or Muscle of the Bladders, that the Lobe may again fublide of it felf, 'tis certain, fome Injury 15

#### (245)

is done to the Ventiducts; the Bladders are either broken, and admit the Air into the Membranous Interffices, or elfe they are over-diftended, like a Hernia in the Peritoneum; and this will produce an Inflation of the whole Subffance of the Lungs, and that a continual compression of the Air and Blood-Veffels, which will produce a constant Afthma; But where the Fits are Periodic, 'tis certain there is no permanent inflated Tumor, but that depends on a flux of windy Serum into the Nerves, or on the preternatural Rarefaction of the Succus Nervosus, by external Accidents.

This flatulent Tumor of the Lungs has been oft obferv'd in Afthmatics. Car. Pifo obferves a Dyfpnæa in an Arthritic, à Pulmone tumente. And De Graaf de Succ. Pancreatico, has this Obfervation, Sapius offendimus Pulmonum Parenchyma, atque vafa flatu diftenta. Rhodius obferves, that the Lungs of an Afthmatic were Turgid with Wind: Other Authors have obferved the extraordinary bignefs of the Lungs, and that they could not be eafily kept in the Thorax opened.

The

A

e

I

d

2

D

1

IS

#### ( 246 )

The Cure of the broken Wind cannot eafily be projected any other way, but by a Parafentefis in the Thorax; for if the external Air be admitted, it will comprefs the flatulent Tumor, and through the fame hole a Styptic and Carminative Hydromel may be injected, to reftore by its Stypticity the Tone of the Membranes, and difcufs by its Aromatic Acrimony the windy Spirits, or Air retained in the Lungs. This may eafily be tried in the broken Winded Horfes, by injecting through a Hole made in the declining Part of the Breaft.

I perceive the Experiment of Dr. Lowers, by which he produced the Afthma in a Dog, by cutting the Nerves of the Diaphragme, has occasioned fome Moderns to impute the Althma, as he doth, to some Strain, or loss of Tone in the Nerves of the Diaphragme. But this cutting of the Nerves, if nearly confider'd, doth only hinder the motion of the Diaphragme, and that being hindred, the Breast cannot be dilated fully by the Intercostal Muscles; the want of that Dilatation compresses the Lungs, and hinders their due Expansion, and this must occasion a Dyspnaa, as Gibbosity, or a Pleurify

#### ( 247 )

Pleurify doth, in which the Intercostal Muscles are hindred from dilating the Breast, for which they serve as well as the Diaphragme. It feems to me a mistake, to believe the Nerves of the Diaphragme can be injured by any Strain; for Strains only affect the Body of a Mufcle, and not the Nerves inferted into it ; and I could never perceive any Injury done to the Muscle or Tendon of the Diaphragme in the Afthma, but that as well as the Intercostal Muscles, strive with all their force to dilate the Breaft, but all in vain, because the Bronchia are compressed or constringed by the Inflation of the Membrane : And if the Air cannot be admitted, the Breast cannot be dilated by its Mufcles, as we plainly perceive when any External Body flips into the Windpipe, whereby the Air is excluded in some measure ; this produces a violent Orthopnæa and Suffocation very fuddenly. lider'd, doth outy carnet L

# divd di de RTISEMENT.

Ш

of

d,

22 5

1

A

a

R Emarks upon fome late Papers relating to the Univerial Deluge, and to the Natural Hiltory of the Earth. By John Harris M. of A. and Fellow of the Royal Society. 8°.

FINIS. FINIS.

